

---

---

# **A GRAMMAR OF CONTEMPORARY SLOVAK**

---

**JOZEF MISTRÍK**

**SLOVENSKÉ PEDAGOGICKÉ NAKLADATELSTVO  
BRATISLAVA 1988**

autor © prof. PhDr. Jozef Mistrík, DrSc., 1982

rektoroval: prof. PhDr. Ľudovít Novák, DrSc.

schválilo Ministerstvo školstva SSR dňa 20. 4. 1982 č. Š 4666/1982-32 ako vysokoškolskú učebnicu  
pre poslucháčov Letného seminára slovenského jazyka.

Ďruhé vydanie.

# PREFACE

*This is not a text-book but a normative handbook of the Slovak language. The descriptive style is applied here. This concise Grammar of Contemporary Slovak is understood within a rather wider context, discussing, apart from grammar itself, also the development of the language. Sections dealing with pronunciation, orthography, vocabulary and dialectology are also to be found in the book. With regard to the type of language, a major part is devoted to morphology. Contrasting notes are given in the text – directly or indirectly – only in places where they seemed indispensable with regard to the different language types of English and Slovak.*

*The book is destined to linguists possessing at least the rudiments of Slovak or of some other Slavonic language and able to use a Slovak-English dictionary.*

*In many cases the examples are translated into English. This is omitted where the author assumes either the user's knowledge of the words or his ability to look them up in dictionary.*

**Author**

---

## PLACE OF THE SLOVAK LANGUAGE IN THE LANGUAGE FAMILY

Slovak is a Slavonic language. It belongs to the Slavonic sub-family forming one branch of the so-called Indo-European languages. The Indo-European languages are related in some measure to one another and constitute a great family of languages that are spread over the broad expanse from the Indian subcontinent westwards through Europe as far as the Americas. The following are some of the principal languages included in the Indo-European family:

- a) Indo-Iranian languages (Old-Indic, Middle-Indic, New-Indic languages and Persian);
- b) Greek (Old-Greek and New-Greek);
- c) Armenian;
- d) Latin and the Romance languages (Romanian, Italian, Spanish, Portuguese, French);
- e) Celtic languages (Irish, Scottish and Welsh, Breton; the others are dead);
- f) Germanic languages (German, Danish, Swedish, Norwegian, Dutch, Frisian, Flemish, English and the dead Gothic language);
- g) Baltic languages (Lithuanian, Latvian and the dead Old-Prussian language);
- h) Slavonic languages.

The Slavonic languages as a whole are spread close to the Baltic languages. Hence, it is considered that at some early period the Slavonic and Baltic languages had formed one language association called Balto-Slavonic. This period in the development of the Proto-Indo-European languages up to the Proto-Slavonic languages is called the Balto-Slavonic period.

The Slavs had originally lived between the Vistula and the Oder Rivers north of the Carpathian mountains and they spread out to the west up to the Elbe River, to the south down to the Balkans and the Adriatic and to the east to Russia and the Ukraine as far as and even beyond the Urals and the Black Sea.

The period of closer relations among the Slavs dates back to the disintegration of Great Moravia (beginning of the 10th century). As stated above, the period previous to the 10th century in the development of the Slavonic language is called the Proto-Slavonic period and the language of the Slavs of that time is called the Proto-Slavonic language. This language, however, was not quite uniform. It was divided into dialects of individual tribes. Later, individual Slavonic languages and their dialects developed from some of the previous dialects.

The most widely spread Slavonic language is Russian which forms the East-Slavonic language group together with the Ukrainian and Byelorussian languages.

The South-Slavonic languages are spread in the Balkans (Bulgarian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovene and Macedonian).

Slovak, Czech, Polish, Upper and Lower Lusatian and the dead language of the Slavs living near the Elbe, form the West-Slavonic language group. The language closest to Slovak is Czech. But some characteristic features show that its relations to Polish as well as to the East-Slavonic languages had been active.

The first more extensive Slavonic written records date from the 9th century and they come from Great Moravia. At that time the Slavonic languages were still remarkably close. The Slavs of the Danube and Moravia regions still understood the language of the Balkan Slavs.

---

## FROM THE HISTORY OF THE STANDARD LANGUAGE

In the year 863 Cyril and Methodius, two brothers from the Byzantine Empire, came to the Great Moravian prince Rastislav. They brought religious and liturgical books with them and translated them into the Macedonian cultural language of Salonica. King Svätopluk, however, expelled Methodius's disciples from the Great Moravian Empire. They went to the Slavonic south and founded the tradition of the Slavonic letters in Bulgaria, which was later spread among the Slavs in the east and in the eastern part of the south. These Slavs have been using the old Cyrillic alphabet until now.

The language used in this literature is called the Old-Slavonic or the Old-Bulgarian language. Later it was also called the Old Church-Slavonic language.

### **Latin in Slovakia**

In the second half of the 10th century the Hungarian Empire was being built under the Hungarian ruler Gejza and his son Stephen. The new Hungarian state rose on the foundations of Great Moravia as the Great Moravian feudal system had already been developed to a considerably high degree. Thus, at that time, Hungary came under the influence of the western feudal culture. Along with this, the Latin language was used as the language of liturgy, of culture and as the administrative language. The Slovak aristocracy, being under the influence of the king, became used to the non-Slavonic environment. Hungary was a state of many languages and Latin was used there until the mid-19th century. Thus, the Latin language was also used in Slovakia since the beginnings of the Hungarian Empire till the middle of the 19th century.

### **Czech as the Standard Language in Slovakia**

After the disintegration of Great Moravia, the Czech countries became separated from Slovakia which became a part of the Hungarian Empire. Close cultural relations existed between Bohemia and Slovakia and these became intensified after the foundation of the Prague university in the year 1348. Many Slovaks studied at this university. The Czech language also spread under the influence of the Hussite crusades to Slovakia. In the 16th century Czech-Slovak relations were revived by Czech protestants coming to Slovakia. The Czech language was used in Slovakia as

the standard language alongside Latin till the end of the 18th century. Since it was the language of the so-called “Kralická bible” it is sometimes referred to as the biblical language. (“Kralická bible” is the Czech translation of the Bible which was published in 6 volumes in the years 1579–1593 in Kralice – Moravia. The cultured language of this translation became the base for further development of the Czech language. Czech exiles pursued by the counterreformation brought “Kralická bible” to Slovakia. The language of the Bible – the biblical language or “bibličtina” replaced the Latin language in Slovakia and it became the language of the Slovak protestant liturgy.) Numerous Slovak words have penetrated into this language and are generally known as slovakisms.

## **Slovak as the Cultural Language**

Latin and Czech were written in Slovakia, but Slovak was spoken here. It was the language of the whole nation, as all the people of Slovak nationality spoke it. A Slovak national poetry and oral tradition were also created in Slovak. Although Slovak language was neither the official nor the literary nor the religious language, yet it was the language of the Slovak national culture.

As yet, we do not know of all the efforts made during the course of the 15th and 16th centuries to introduce the Slovak language into literature. At that time there was no government willing to use Slovak as the standard language. The period of the 15th–17th centuries was marked by frequent uprisings, crusades and also by the Turkish invasion.

Major efforts to establish Slovak as the standard language emerged in the 17th century. Vavrinec Benedikt from Nedožery (1555–1615) in his “Gramatika česká” (The Czech Grammar, Prague 1603) incites the Slovaks to love their mother tongue and to deepen their knowledge of it. Benedikt Szőlősy in the introduction to “Cantus catholici” (1655) praises the Slovak language. Daniel Sinapius Horčička (1630–1706) in the Latin introduction to his “Nový trh latinsko-slovenský” (1678) praises the outstanding qualities of his mother tongue, its purity and complains that there is no one to improve it. Matej Bel (1684–1749) in the Latin introduction to Doležal’s “Gramatika československá” (The Czechoslovak Grammar, 1745) compares the Slovak language with the other cultural languages and praises its outstanding qualities.

Slovak educated people, however, still wrote in Latin or in the biblical language. But their Czech was less and less perfect and they took over many Slovak words into their Czech language.

## **Anton Bernolák**

In the second half of the 18th century, centralism was introduced by Maria Theresa (1740–1780) and her son Joseph II. (1781–1790) in the Austro-Hungarian Empire. At that time the Austro-Hungarian ethnic groups changed into nations and

also in the modern sense of the word the idea of a standard Slovak language came into being.

Anton Bernolák (1762–1813) published his Latin works “Jazykovednokritická rozprava o slovenských písmenách” (The Philological-Critical Discussion on Slovak Letters) and “Pravopis slovenského jazyka” (Orthography of the Slovak Language) in which he justified the need to use a standard Slovak language and the formalized Slovak orthography. This system of the Slovak language was published in his “Slovenská gramatika” (A Slovak Grammar). He also compiled a dictionary in six volumes “Slovár slovenský česko-latinsko-nemecko-uherský” (The Slovak-Czech-Latin-German-Hungarian Dictionary) which, however, was published only after his death (1825–1927). Bernolák was the first to establish a standard Slovak language; he worked out its orthographical system and its grammar and dictionary.

Bernolák’s norm of Slovak was based on the language of the Trnava university (1635–1777) which in turn drew on the West-Slovak dialect. But Bernolák introduced some Central-Slovak elements to this language, too, including, for example, the soft-liquid “r” and numerous words.

The most prominent writers, all Bernolák’s followers, were Juraj Fándly (1754–1811) who wrote instructive works (“Včelár” – The Bee-keeper, “Zelinkár” – The Herbalist, “Piňní domajší a poňní hospodár” – The Industrious Husbandman) and especially Ján Hollý (1785–1849) who roused the Slovak people by his fiery writings and published the Slovak history in his epic poems (“Svätopluk”, “Cyrilo-Metodiáda”, “Sláv”) and idyls.

Bernolák’s standard language, however, did not become the language of all Slovaks. The protestants still wrote in the traditional language of “Kralická bible”.

## **Ludovít Štúr**

The present standard language was introduced by Štúr’s generation. The leaders of this group Ludovít Štúr (1815–1856), Jozef Miloslav Hurban (1817–1888) and Michal Miloslav Hodža (1811–1870) decided to establish the Slovak language on the basis of the Central-Slovak dialect. They did so in the year 1843 in Hlboké.

Ludovít Štúr gave reasons for this decision in his “Nárečja slovenskuo alebo potreba písanja v tomto nárečí” (The Slovak Dialect or the Necessity to Write in this Dialect, 1846). He also wrote the grammar “Náuka reči slovenskej” (The Theory of the Slovak Language, 1846). This standard language became the language of all the Slovaks. Books, newspapers and journals were published in it. It was improved by poets and writers, Štúr’s followers (A. Sládkovič, J. Kalinčiak, J. Král, J. Botto, etc). Their ideas were further improved by the cultural association Matica slovenská (The Slovak Foundation, from 1863).

A Slovak grammar based on scientific principles was worked out by Martin Hattala in his “Krátka mluvnice slovenská” (A Concise Slovak Grammar, 1852). It became the starting-point of the standard norm for the language. Later on he worked out the system of the standard Slovak language in his “Srovnávací mluvnice jazyka českého a slovenského” (A Comparative Grammar of the Czech and Slovak



Languages, 1857) and “Mluvnica jazyka slovenského” (A Grammar of the Slovak Language, 1864). At the turn of the 19th and 20th centuries, Samo Czambel helped to improve the language through his “Rukoväť spisovnej reči slovenskej” (A Handbook of the Standard Slovak Language, 1902). This work was the only book of the standard language until it was superseded by “Pravidlá slovenského pravopisu” (Principles of Slovak Orthography), published in 1931.

## **Slovak after 1918**

Slovak became the official language in Slovakia in the Czechoslovak Republic after 1918. Its stylistic range widened. Many journals and books, fairy-tails, fictions and also scientific literature, came to be published in Slovak. Much progress was made in the investigating of the language, new text-books and scientific works were published. As noted above, the first “Pravidlá slovenského pravopisu” was published in 1931.

At present the Slovak language is a modern standard language which has been further developed since 1945. It is the official language in Slovakia. New words are constantly added to its stock and its grammatical system is standardized.

Departments of the Slovak language were opened in the universities and a research institute for Slovak (Jazykovedný ústav Ľudovíta Štúra – The Linguistic Institute of Ľudovít Štúr) was established in the Slovak Academy of Sciences. Many scientific works and fiction are translated from Slovak, as well as into Slovak. Today, Slovak has a similar range of styles and applications as other European languages.

---

---

# LETTERS AND SOUNDS

## SLOVAK ALPHABET

a, á, ä, b, c, č, d, ď, dz, dž, e, é, f, g, h, ch, i, í, j, k, l, ľ, ľ, m, n, ň, o, ó, ô, p, r, ř, s, š, t, ť, u, ú, v, y, ý, z, ž

The letter *ô* represents the diphthong [ɔo].

The letters *q, w, x* are used in adopted or foreign loan words.

The diagraphs *dz, dž, ch* are considered as single characters.

Slovak diacritical marks: ˇ (mäkčeň) – the softening mark; this mark over a consonant indicates its palatalization or “soft”, “liquid” pronunciation. It is printed in two forms: ˇ with the letters *c, s, z, n* (č, š, ž, ň) and ̣ with the letters *d, t, l* (ď, ť, ľ), but this is just a convention. In handwritten texts it is always ˇ. ˘ (dĺžeň) – the prolongation mark (the value of vowels and consonants becomes doubled). ̈ (dve bodky – diaeresis) – two dots over the letter *a* – ä, which may be pronounced as *a* in the word *bad*, but in modern Slovak it is usually pronounced as *e* in the word *set*. ˆ (vokáň) – the mark above the letter *o* – ô; the letter *ô* is pronounced as [ɔo].

The names of the letters: a, á, ä, bé, cé, čé, dé, ďé, džé, džé, e, é, ef, gé, há, chá, i, í, jé, ká, el, eľ, eľ, em, en, eň, o, ó, ɔo, pé, er, eř, es, eš, té, fé, u, ú, vé, ypsilon, zet, žet. The names of *q, w, x* are kvé, dvojité vé and iks.

## VOWELS

Each letter in the Slovak alphabet represents a distinct sound.

Slovak has five short vowels (*a, e, i, o, u*) and five long ones corresponding to these (*á, é, í, ó, ú*). Letters *y, ý* are only orthographic variants of *i, í* as well as *ä*, which in modern Slovak usually sounds as *e*. It is very important to distinguish between short and long vowels, because they may present different phonemes. E.g. *zástávka* (a small flag), *zastávka* (a stop), *zlé* (bad), *zle* (badly). Long *ó* is found only in adopted or foreign words.

## APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION

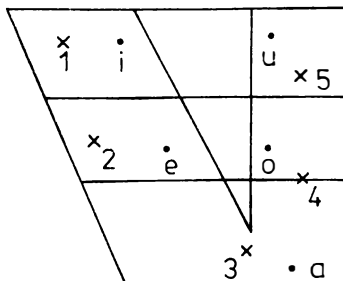
Letter	in English	Slovak Examples
a	a as in <i>cut</i>	na, ak, sa
á	a as in <i>father</i>	mám, dám, vám

e	e as in <i>set</i>
é	e es in <i>bed</i> , but longer
i	i as in <i>sit</i>
í	ee as in <i>need</i>
o	o as in <i>odd</i>
ó	aw as in <i>saw</i>
u	u as in <i>put</i>
ú	oo as in <i>choose</i>
y	i as in <i>sit</i>
ý	ee as in <i>need</i>
ä	e as in <i>set</i> (or as in <i>bat</i> )

veda, dve
malé, aké, pravé
iba, milá, sila
musí, patrí, líška
ono, dom, tamto, toto
filológ, móda, sóda
ruka, urob, spolu
lúka, úloha, ústa
vysoko, kvety, akoby
zlý, vysoký, býva
najmä, mäso, päta

The equivalentents are the best approximate. For the sake of accuracy we introduce the vowel systems in order to permit comparison between the Slovak system of short vowels and their closest English approximations :

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 1. [i] sit | 1. ĺba  |
| 2. [e] set | 2. veda |
| 3. [ʌ] cut | 3. sa   |
| 4. [ɔ] odd | 4. dom  |
| 5. [ʊ] put | 5. ruka |



## CONSONANTS

The consonant sounds *b, d, f, g, l, m, n, s, z, v* are pronounced approximately as in English. The consonant *h* is pronounced as in the word *hand* (strongly aspirate). The consonants *k, p, t* are never pronounced with aspiration. The consonant *j* corresponds to the English [j] in the word *yes*. The consonant *c* is pronounced as [ts] and never as [s] or [k]; *č* corresponds to the English [tʃ] in the word *child*. The consonant *š* is similar to [ʃ] in *she* and *ž* to the English [ʒ] in the word *television*. The consonant *ch* is normally a voiceless sound. It is similar to German *ch* (*das Buch*), or to the Russian *x* and to Scottish *ch* in *loch*. The consonant *r* is rolled as in Scottish, the tongue must vibrate, must tap the ridge behind the upper teeth at least once during articulation; it corresponds to Russian *r*. *Ď, Ľ, ň, ť* are palatal sounds vaguely corresponding to the English sounds in *during, lurid, news, tutor*. The consonants *dz, dž* are formed at the same place as *c, č*, but are voiced.

The consonants *l, ľ* and *r, ř* can form syllables (*ľ, ř* occur only in the same position as vowels). *Ľ, ř* are long consonants: *stľp, křdeľ*.

The letters *q, w, x* are foreign to the Slovak alphabet. *Q* is pronounced as [kv], *w* usually becomes [v] as in *very*, *x* is pronounced as [ks]: *text*.

## APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION

Letter in English		Slovak Examples
b	<i>b</i> as in <i>but</i>	robiť, treba, akoby, bývať
c	<i>ts</i> as in <i>its</i>	viac, cesta, práca, noc, celkom
č	<i>tʃ</i> as in <i>child</i>	čo, čas, prečo, číslo, počuť
d	<i>d</i> as in <i>date</i>	do, teda, dom
ď	<i>dʲ</i> as in <i>during</i>	choď, ďalší, ďakovať, chúďa, mláďa
dz	as <i>ts</i> , but voiced (no English equivalent)	medzi, mláďza, hrdza
dž	as <i>č</i> , but voiced as in <i>jam</i>	džbán, džavotať, džungľa, hádže
f	<i>f</i> as in <i>face</i>	forma, farba, dúfať, fosfor
g	<i>g</i> as in <i>to go</i>	orgán, fragment, gaštan, gajdy
h	<i>h</i> with strong emphasis	hlava, hlas, hoci, hrať, noha
ch	Scottish <i>ch</i> , Russian <i>x</i>	ich, nech, trocha, ach, chlap
j	<i>j</i> as in <i>yes</i>	ja, aj, jeho, nájdeme, vojna
k	<i>k</i> as in <i>nickel</i>	ako, kto, keby
l	<i>l</i> as in <i>lead</i>	slnko, dlhý, plný, okolo, vlast
l	<i>l</i> as in <i>lurid</i>	veľa, veľmi, podľa, hľadať, chvíľa
ĺ	long <i>l</i> (no English equivalent)	žltok, chlpek, stĺp
m	<i>m</i> as in <i>milk</i>	málo, sem
n	<i>n</i> as in <i>not</i>	na, on, strana, poznáš, ráno
ň	<i>ň</i> as in <i>news</i>	oheň, kameň, mňa, dňa, chráň
p	<i>p</i> as in <i>open</i>	po, práve, pán, posledný, aspoň
r	trilled as in Scottish	ktorý, preto, ruka, dobre, tvár
ř	long <i>r</i> (no English equivalent)	mŕtvy, hŕba, vŕtať, trpneš
s	<i>s</i> as in <i>to save</i>	sa, prísť, starý, písať, istý
š	<i>ʃ</i> as in <i>she</i>	váš, štyri, duša, zostávaš, piš
t	<i>t</i> as in <i>not</i>	tento, stál, takto, ostatný, otvor
ť	<i>tʲ</i> as in <i>tutor</i>	ťažký, byť, mať, hovoriť, dosť
v	<i>v</i> as in <i>very</i>	svoj, nový, vravieť, vysoký, volá
z	<i>z</i> as in <i>zone</i>	začať, za, zem, ukázať, zlý
ž	<i>ʒ</i> as in <i>television</i>	že, život, vždy, držať, živý
q	<i>kv</i> as in <i>quality</i>	quasi
w	<i>v</i> as in <i>very</i>	whisky
x	<i>x</i> as in <i>next</i>	taxa, prax, Alex, taxi

## PALATALISATION

In spelling *i*, *í* or *e* following after *d*, *l*, *n*, *t* usually mark the soft, “liquid” form of the consonants:

in writing:

*di, li, ni, ti*

*dí, lí, ní, tí*

*de, le, ne, te*

in pronunciation:

*ďí, lí, ňí, tí*

*ďí, lí, ňí, tí*

*ďe, le, ňe, te*

(Contrary to: *dy, ly, ny, ty; dý, lý, ný, tý; dé, lé, né, té.*)

E.g. *deti* is pronounced as *ďeťi*, *nikto* as *ňikto*, *ticho* as *ticho*, *sedí* as *seďí*, *nelení* as *neľeňí* etc.

## DIPHTHONGS

Slovak has three diphthongs with *i* as the first element [i̯a, i̯e, i̯u] plus the diphthong *ô* [uo]. The element *i* has a relatively higher prominence or is more sonorous than the second element (*a, e, u*). The diphthong *ia* is pronounced as [i̯a], *ie* as [i̯e], *iu* as [i̯u], the diphthong *ô* as [uo].

E.g. *viac* – [vi̯ac], *miesto* – [mi̯esto], *cudziu* – [cudzi̯u], *kôň* – [kuo̯ň]. Or *nie* – [ňi̯e], *vedieť* – [veďi̯eť], *myslieť* – [misli̯eť], etc.

## VOICED AND VOICELESS CONSONANTS

Most consonants are paired in respect to whether they are voiced or voiceless (breathed). The place of articulation is the same for both pairs. With voiced consonants the vocal cords vibrate, while with voiceless consonants they remain motionless.

## PAIRS OF CONSONANTS

Voiced	<i>b</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>ď</i>	<i>dz</i>	<i>dž</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>v</i>	<i>z</i>	<i>ž</i>
Voiceless	<i>p</i>	<i>t</i>	<i>ť</i>	<i>c</i>	<i>č</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>ch</i>	<i>f</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>š</i>

The consonants *j, l, ḷ, m, n, ň, r* are voiced, but have no voiceless correspondents.

When a voiced (paired) consonant stands at the end of the word, it becomes voiceless:

*keď* is pronounced as *keť*

*obraz* is pronounced as *obras*

*pohľad* is pronounced as *pohľat*

*prípád* is pronounced as *prípat*

*pohyb* is pronounced as *pohip*

When a voiced and voiceless consonants meet in a group, all consonants are assimilated according to the last consonant:

*všetok* is pronounced as *fšetok*

*nikdy* is pronounced as *ňigdi*

*otázka* is pronounced as *otáska*

*ťažko* is pronounced as *ťáško*

*vzchopiť sa* is pronounced as *fschopiť sa*

## STRESS

Stress means a louder pronunciation of the stressed syllable in a word.

Stress in Slovak is attached to the first syllable of a word. It is not very strong, it is weaker than that of English or German or Russian and stronger than the French stress. Stress is independent of the length of vowels. The words *kríva* and *krivá* are stressed at the same way, though the length of the vowels differs.

Monosyllabic conjunctions *a, i, aj, no, lež, že...*, monosyllabic personal pronouns (enclitics) *ma, ťa, ho, mi, ti, mu, jej, ju...*, auxiliary verb forms of the verb *byť* e.g. *som, si, je, sme, ste, sú...* are not stressed.

Slovak prepositions are pronounced together with the following word as a single word. Rules for assimilation apply:

- v škole* is pronounced as *fškole*
- z práce* is pronounced as *spráce*
- s bratom* is pronounced as *zbratom*
- bez teba* is pronounced as *besteba*

## HARD, SOFT AND NEUTRAL CONSONANTS

Consonants are divided into three groups. The classification is useful in their application in the differentiation of declension of nouns and adjectives.

Hard consonants: *g, h, ch, k, d, n, t.*

Soft consonants: *c, dz, j* and all consonants with the diacritic mark *ˇ*.

Neutral consonants: *b, f, l, m, p, r, s, v, z.*

After hard consonants we write *y* or *ý*: *chytať, hymna, kyslý, kývať*. After soft consonants we write *i* or *í*: *oči, cit, cudzí, prší*.

## PROSODIC PROPERTIES OF A SENTENCE

A concrete live utterance has such prosodic properties as are connected with utterance as a whole. They deal mainly with tonality, sentence-stress, pause, rhythm and speed. It is a matter of convention that these properties have their concrete meaning in the usage of a language. Therefore their different forms become stylistic means in oral utterances. If, for example, neither the descending nor the rising tonality is applied, the intonational form of the utterance is considered as one stylized by the sound. A certain stylistic value can also be found in various utterances where no pauses are realized in individual utterances, or where the pause applied between sentences is shorter than between words. Etc.

Notional utterances may be roughly characterized as follows: the utterance is finished by a falling or rising intonation and the pause occurs after each complete utterance. This intonational scheme, however, involves many different variants in practice.

Notional utterances are less frequent and the expressive element is more or less applied in each oral utterance. The prosodic elements are tonality, stress and pause.

**Tonality.** The variation in the pitch of the voice in a connected speech is called tonality. The following items are important in speech: absolute height, i.e. the average pitch of the tone in speech, the wave frequency and the tone intervals (the distances between two extreme tonalities in one melody scheme).

A raised (higher) tonality may mean a more ceremonious, formal or declamatory character of the utterance and also some extent of expressivity. The lower tone range provokes a sombre mood and is also used as an expressive means. Variations in the absolute height of tonality help to separate extra-sentence elements; such are, for instance, various parentheses, sometimes a secondary direct speech and also direct speech in longer utterances.

The wave frequency modifies the dynamics of speech. A higher frequency is typical of lectures, reports and dialogues. A higher frequency is also characteristic of stronger emotions. A lower frequency indicates an intellectual character of the utterance.

**Stress and emphasis.** Individual syllables are pronounced with different degrees of strength – with a different stress. A stronger stress in Slovak lies on the first syllable of the word; this is called the word-stress. The strongest stress in a sentence is to be found on the word which is its theme. Usually only the first syllable of the most important word in a sentence is emphasized and thus the word stress becomes the sentence stress, i.e. emphasis. Stress is not measured by the intensity of the voice, but by the interval between the strength of the emphasized element and that of the environment. The word stress has only a potential impact: it need not be implemented in each case. An oral utterance may be divided into several rhythmical parts, called bars. Apart from the main sentence-stress emphasis may also occur in the individual bars. The quicker the utterance, the longer are the bars, and vice versa.

**Pause.** There are various intervals between words in a sentence, and also various intervals between sentences in a longer utterance. The longest interval is called a pause. It can ensue in an oral utterance through a sudden interruption, as well as through an interruption due to psychological reason. A certain hierarchy of pauses exists in an utterance: the most expressive pause occurs between utterances, relatively less expressive pauses occur between the bars inside an utterance, etc. We may not be aware of pauses between words, but they can be used as stylistic means in rhetoric.

The tonality, emphasis and pause do not occur separately in a particular speech. Each utterance has its tonality as well as emphasis and pauses connected to it. All the three elements of a prosodical nature of a sentence are mutually interrelated. The complex formed by tonality, emphasis and pause is called *intonation*. Intonation creates meaning. Conventionally fixed is the intonation of a question as compared to that of a statement (*Boli sme prví? – Boli sme prví.*), or the intonation of the imperative as compared to that of a statement or a question (*Začíname! – Začínáme. – Začíname?*), etc. Intonation creates meaning and therefore we cannot use arbitrary sound schemes in particular utterances.

# PARTS OF SPEECH

Words, according to their lexical meaning and grammatical characteristics, are divided into ten parts of speech, which are inflectional and non-inflectional.

## a) The inflectional parts of speech

**Nouns**, according to their lexical meaning, are names for things, i.e. individuals, animals, plants and inanimate objects. Here belong also independent names for qualities, actions, mental processes and states. Nouns in Slovak are divided according to their gender.

**Adjectives**, according to their lexical meaning, indicate the qualities of things, e.g. *strecha* (roof) – *veľká strecha* (big roof) – *nová strecha* (new roof). Qualitative adjectives have degrees of comparison, i.e. they can indicate the degree of a quality by forming comparatives or superlatives, e.g. *milý chlapec* (kind boy) – *milší chlapec* (kinder boy) – *najmilší chlapec* (the kindest boy).

**Pronouns**, according to their lexical meaning can replace nouns or adjectives. Pronouns do not name objects, they only refer to the objects from the speaker's point of view.

**Numerals** indicate the numeral characteristics, i.e. the quantity and the order, e.g. *štyri* (four), *štvrtý* (the fourth), *štvornásobný* (fourfold).

**Verbs**, according to their lexical meaning are the names of action (e.g. *sedieť* – to sit, *písať* – to write) or states (e.g. *starnúť* – to grow old, *zelenieť* – to turn green). The verb forms are divided into finite and non-finite. Slovak verbs have a special category which is called aspect (“vid”).

The alteration of endings on words is called declension when referring to nouns, adjectives, pronouns and numerals. It is called conjugation when referring to verbs.

## b) The non-inflectional parts of speech

**Adverbs**, according to their lexical meaning indicate the circumstances of actions or qualities, as for example place, time, manner, cause and the degree of a quality. Many adverbs are derived from adjectives and also have degrees of comparison, e.g. *ľahký* (easy), *ľahko* (easily), *ľahšie* (more easily), *najľahšie* (most easily). Therefore, adverbs derived from adjectives are somewhere on the boundary between the inflectional and non-inflectional parts of speech.

**Prepositions** show various relations among objects or among actions, or relations of objects to qualities. They are used with nouns, pronouns or noun equivalents to show their relation to some other element in a sentence or phrase. In connection with the cases of nouns they form prepositional cases, e.g. *dom* (a house) – *v dome* (in a house) – *do domu* (to a house) – *pri dome* (by a house).



**Conjunctions express:** 1. various coordinative relations between two elements of a sentence or between sentences. E.g. *stól a stolička* (table and chair), *spievať a tancovať* (sing and dance). These are coordinative conjunctions; 2. various subordinative relations between the main and the subordinate sentences, e.g. *povedal, že nepríde* (he said that he would not come). These are subordinative conjunctions.

Particles are words that introduce sentences and add nuances of meaning and mood to them, e.g. *len* (only), *tiež* (too), *hoci* (though).

Interjections express the speaker's immediate feelings, mood and determination, e.g. *ach* (ah), *fuj* (ugh). They also imitate sounds, these are called onomatopoeic interjections, e.g. *bác* (bang), *žblnk* (plump).

According to the application of the lexical and grammatical characteristics to different parts of speech, we distinguish:

1. autonomous words: all the inflectional words and the adverbs. These words have their meanings and they are usually independent sentence elements;

2. auxiliary words: prepositions, conjunctions and particles. These words have only a general meaning that follows from their connection with other words and sentences. Therefore, the auxiliary words, although expressing relations in sentences, are not independent sentence elements;

3. interjections have their independent meaning but no relationship to other words is expressed by them. They are phrases in themselves.

## **NOUNS**

### **MEANING OF NOUNS**

Nouns are the names for things, i.e. individuals, animals and plants, as well as independent names of qualities, actions, mental processes and states, e.g. *učiteľ* (teacher), *Ján* (John), *krava* (cow), *ruža* (rose), *skala* (rock), *Dunaj* (the Danube), *radosť* (joy), *písanie* (writing), *pláč* (cry).

Nouns are divided into concrete and abstract nouns. Concrete nouns are all the names of individuals, animals, plants and things. E.g. *človek* (man), *profesor* (professor), *kôň* (horse), *strom* (tree), *orech* (nut), *atrament* (ink). Abstract nouns are the names for qualities, actions, mental processes and states, e.g. *žiaľ* (grief), *priateľstvo* (friendship), *láska* (love), *odvaha* (courage), *sila* (strength), *zdravie* (health).

Nouns are divided into common and proper nouns.

The common noun is a name which can refer to any object of the same kind, e.g. *dievča* (girl), *les* (forest), *krajina* (country). The proper noun is a name which refers to a specific and unique object. The names *Anton* (Anthony), *Slovensko* (Slovakia), *Veľká Británia* (Great Britain) are proper nouns because each of them designates only that particular person and that particular country to which these names belong. Proper nouns are usually concrete.

## FORMATION OF NOUNS

In connection with the development of production, with changes in the social system, etc. new instruments and products, new social systems as well as new occupations are evolving. Therefore, new words are formed in a language. New words are formed by means of suffixes, prefixes and by means of combination.

### Formation of Nouns by Means of Suffixes

a) Names of individuals according to the activity they pursue, are formed from the verb stems or roots with the aid of these suffixes:

-*tel*: učiteľ (teacher), čitateľ (reader), prednášateľ (lecturer), spisovateľ (writer), mysliteľ (thinker);

-*č*: holič (barber), hasič (fireman), kurič (stoker), hráč (player);

-*ák, -iak*: spevák (singer), divák (spectator), tulák (tramp),

-*ec*: letec (aviator), plavec (swimmer), vedec (scientist), kupec (merchant), strelec (rifleshooter);

-*ca*: sudca (judge), správca (administrator), strážca (guard), obranca (defender), obhajca (advocate), zástupca (representative), radca (councillor);

-*ár, -iar*: fajčiar (smoker), lekár (physician), pekář (baker), pisár (scribe).

b) Names of individuals according to their occupations are usually formed from nouns and adjectives and sometimes from verbs by means of the suffixes:

-*ár, -iar*: hodinár (watchmaker), mliekár (dairyman), mlynár (miller), novinár (journalist), rybár (fisherman), sklár (glass-blower);

-*nik, -ník*: pracovník (worker), remeselník (artisan), roľník (peasant), úradník (clerk), vrátnik (porter), záhradník (gardener).

c) Names of bearers of certain qualities are formed from adjectives by means of the suffixes:

-*ík*: násilník (bully), maškrtník (sweet-toothed), smrteľník (mortal);

-*ec*: zajatec (prisoner), umelec (artist), poslanec (deputy), znalec (expert), slepec (blind man).

Sometimes these are formed by the suffixes:

-*oš, -áš, -oň, -ál, -uľa, -uša*: krivoš (lame man), velikáš (megalomaniac), čerňaša (black cow);

-*ák*: dobrák (good-natured fellow), druhák (secondyear pupil);

-*och*: beloch (white man), černoč (blackman);

-*áň*: dlháň (tall fellow), skupáň (miser).

Names referring to the membership of an individual in a social organization or in some movement, are formed by means of the suffixes:

-*ovec* or -*ec*: štúrovec (follower of Štúr), mičurinec (follower of Michurin);

-*ár, -iar*: hraničiar (borderguard), odborár (trade-unionist).

d) Names indicating place of origin, stay, nationality etc. are formed by means of the suffixes:

**-an, -čan**: Bratislavčan, Trenčan, Košičan (citizen of Bratislava, Trenčín, Košice);  
**-ák, -iak**: Záhorák, Lipták (that living in Záhorie, Liptov), *dolník* (lowlander),  
*horniak* (highlander);  
**-iar**: východniar (one who lives in east Slovakia), západniar (one who lives in the west);  
**-ec**: Oravec (inhabitant of Orava), Japonec (a Japanese).

e) Names of places are formed by the suffixes:

**-áreň**: cukráreň (sweetshop), lekáreň (chemist's), mliekáreň (dairy), pekáreň (bakery), kaviareň (café), nocľaháreň (dormitory);  
**-ovňa**: opravovňa (repair shop), poisťovňa (insurance company), snemovňa (parliament), strojovňa (machine-room);  
**-ňa**: spálňa (bedroom), telocvičňa (gymnasium);  
**-isko, nisko, -ište**: ihrisko (playground), rodisko (birthplace), stanovište (location);  
**-ica, -nica**: knižnica (library), rovnica (equation), strážnica (guardroom);  
**-ina**: cudzina (foreign countries), výšina (height), hĺbina (depth);  
**-ník, -nik**: trávnik (lawn), rybník (pond), popolník (ashtray);  
**-ín, -inec**: včelín (bee-hive), starobinec (home for the aged), chudobinec (alms-house);  
**-dlo**: napájadlo (watering-place).

Names of places are also formed by the suffix **-ie** from the prepositional cases: *predmestie* (suburb).

f) Names of instruments are formed by means of the suffixes:

**-dlo**: strúhadlo (grater), lietadlo (airplane), nosidlo (stretcher);  
**-ák**: vrták (gimlet), struhák (grater), zdvihák (lift);  
**-č**: chladič (car radiator), sekáč (cutter);  
**-ačka**: krájačka (cutter), striekačka (syringe).

g) Names of products are formed by means of the suffixes:

**-ivo**: farbivo (dye), krmivo (fodder), palivo (fuel), tkanivo (tissue);  
**-ica**: kapustnica (sauerkraut soup), praženica (scrambled eggs), železnica (railway);  
**-ník, nik**: parník (steamer), slovník (dictionary), blatník (mudguard);  
**-ina, -ovina**: bravčovina (pork), miešanina (mixture);  
**-ok**: príbytok (dwelling), bielok (eggwhite), odliatok (cast), príspevok (contribution);  
**-ka, -enka**: vstupenka (admission ticket), zásuvka (drawer), čítanka (school reader).

h) Names of qualities are formed from adjectives by means of the suffixes:

**-osť**: krátkosť (brevity), srdečnosť (cordiality), sladkosť (sweetness), múdrosť (wisdom), hlúposť (stupidity), mladosť (youth), trpezlivosť (patience);  
**-oba**: staroba (old age); choroba (illness);  
**-ota**: novota (novelty), slepota (blindness), dobrotá (goodness), suchota (drought);  
**-stvo, -ctvo**: bohatstvo (wealthness), lajďactvo (slapdash).

i) Names of actions are formed by means of the suffixes:

**-ie**: čítanie (reading), chodenie (walking), volanie (calling); these are verbal nouns;  
**-ot**: šuchot (rustle), buchot (banging), praskot (cracking);  
**-ačka**: kopačka (digging);

-ba: *služba* (duty), *prosba* (request), *túžba* (desire), *tvorba* (creation).

j) Collective nouns are formed by means of the suffixes:

-ie: *kamenie* (stones), *perie* (plumage), *prútie* (bushwood), *korenie* (spices), *uhlie* (coal);

-ina: *zverina* (game), *družina* (suite);

-stvo, -ctvo: *členstvo* (membership), *Slovanstvo* (Slavs), *roľníctvo* (peasantry), *žiactvo* (pupil community).

k) Diminutive nouns are formed by means of the suffixes:

-ík, -ik: *vtáčik* (little bird), *zajačík* (leveret);

-iček: *nožíček* (little knife), *tatiček* (daddy);

-ok: *vlások* (little hair), *kvietok* (little flower), *oriešok* (little nut);

-ec: *domec* (small house), *stromec* (small tree);

-ček: *domček* (small house), *stromček* (small tree), *vrabček* (little sparrow);

-ka: *piecka* (small stove), *muška* (small fly), *dierka* (small hole), *pílka* (small saw);

-ica: *izbica* (small room), *dievčica* (little girl);

-ička: *ružička* (small rose), *ihlička* (small needle), *kravička* (small cow), *mamička* (mummy);

-očka, *ôčka*: *šatôčka* (small scarf), *košelôčka* (small shirt), *chvíľôčka* (short while);

-enka, -ienka, -inka: *maminka* (mummy), *devulienka* (little girl);

-uša, -uľka, -uška: *mamuša* (mummy), *tetuša* (auntie), *Katuška* (Cathy);

-ko: *skielko* (small piece of glass); *otecko* (daddy), *Jožko* (Joe).

l) Augmentative nouns are formed by means of the suffixes -isko, -sko: *chlapisko* (robust fellow), *dievčisko* (big girl), *horisko* (high hill), *knížisko* (big book). Augmentative nouns often carry a very derogative meaning.

m) The names for women are formed from the corresponding names of men. The most frequent suffix is -ka, which is simply added to the masculine names ending in a consonant. E.g. *doktor* – *doktorka* (doctor – woman doctor), *učiteľ* – *učiteľka* (teacher – woman teacher), *Angličan* – *Angličanka* (Englishman – Englishwoman). If the stem ends in -k, -h, -ch, the alternation k/č, h/ž, ch/š take place, e.g. *úradník* – *úradníčka* (clerk – woman clerk), *černoch* – *černoška* (black man – black woman). In names ending in -g, the feminine nouns are formed by the suffix -ička: *geológ* – *geologička* (geologist – woman geologist), *chirurg* – *chirurgička* (surgeon – woman surgeon).

In the nouns ending in -c, this suffix is omitted, e.g. *cudzinec* – *cudzinka* (foreigner), *Nemec* – *Nemka* (German).

Less frequent is the suffix -yňa, e.g. *svedok* – *svedkyňa* (witness – woman witness), *otrok* – *otrokyňa* (slave – female slave).

In names ending in -ník, the suffix -níčka is used: *pomocník* – *pomocníčka* (helper), *robotník* – *robotníčka* (worker).

The suffix -iná is used in some nouns indicating kinship, e.g. *švager* – *švagríná* (brother-in-law – sister-in-law), *strýk* – *stryná* (uncle – aunt).

The ending -ovná is used in some feminine nouns indicating the feudal names of individuals, e.g. *kráľ* – *kráľovná* (king – queen), *cisár* – *cisárovná* (emperor – empress), similarly: *princ* – *princezná* (prince – princess).

## Formation of Nouns by Means of Prefixes

The meaning of nouns can be altered by means of the prefixes:

*proti-*: *protiklad* (contrast), *protiútok* (counter-attack), *protiváha* (counter-weight);

*medi-*: *medziposchodie* (mezzanine), *medzivládie* (interregnum);

*ná-*: *nálet* (air-raid), *nácvik* (drill), *nález* (find);

*nad-*: *nadčlovek* (superman), *nadpis* (title), *nadporučík* (lieutenant), *nadvýroba* (overproduction);

*pod-*: *poddôstojník* (non-commissioned officer), *podhradie* (outer bailey), *podnebie* (climate), *podpredseda* (vice-president);

*pred-*: *predmestie* (suburb), *predpis* (prescription), *predpoklad* (assumption), *predseda* (chairman);

*pra-*: *prajazyk* (proto-language), *prales* (primeval forest), *pravek* (prehistoric times);

*pa-*: *paroh* (antler), *pazvuk* (alien tone);

*sú-*: *súbeh* (competition), *súčasník* (contemporary), *súčet* (sum), *súhlas* (agreement);

*pre-*: *preklad* (translation), *prebytok* (excess), *prehľad* (survey), *presun* (shift), *prestavba* (reconstruction);

*bez-*: *bezvedomie* (inconsciousness), *bezvládie* (anarchy).

## Formation of Nouns by Combination

By combining roots and stems compound nouns are formed. The two elements are most frequently joined with the help of the vowel -o-, e.g. *tlakomer* (manometer), *teploměr* (thermometer), *liehovar* (distillery), *Bielorus* (Byelorussian).

Here also belong compounds whose first element has a meaning close to a prefix, e.g.:

*polo-*, *pol-*: *pologuľa* (hemisphere), *polotma* (semi-darkness), *poldeň* (half-day), *polhárok* (half-sheet), *polmesiac* (crescent), *polnoc* (midnight), *polostrov* (peninsula), *polrok* (half-year);

*spolu-*: *spoluhláska* (consonant), *spolupráca* (co-operation);

*veľ-*: *veľmoc* (the Great Power), *veľtrh* (fair), *veľvyslanec* (ambassador), *veľryba* (whale).

Less often the compounds are formed by a simple connection of two forms (one of them is in the genitive or in some other case), e.g. *zemeguľa* (globe), *kníhtlačiareň* (printing-house), *pravdepodobnosť* (probability), *nocľah* (night-shelter).

## GRAMMATICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF NOUNS

The grammatical characteristics of nouns are gender, number and case.

We distinguish three genders in nouns: masculine, feminine and neuter. Each

noun belongs to one of these three genders. Masculine nouns are divided into animate and inanimate.

Further, there are two numbers : singular and plural. One thing is usually indicated by the singular and more things belonging to the same category are usually indicated by the plural. Nouns plural in form, but indicating only one thing are termed pluralia-tantum, e.g. *nohavice* (trousers).

There are six cases in Slovak :

The nominative	answers the question	kto? čo? (who? or what?)
The genitive	answers the question	koho? čoho? (of whom? or of what?)
The dative	answers the question	komu? čomu? (to whom? or to what?)
The accusative	answers the question	koho? čo? (whom? or what?)
The locative	answers the question	(o) kom? (o) čom? (about whom? or about what?)
The instrumental	answers the question	kým? čím? (with whom? or with what?)

These cases permit to express different relations between objects, between actions and objects and between qualities and objects.

## GRAMMATICAL GENDER

There is no noun in Slovak which would not belong to one of the grammatical genders. We distinguish between natural gender and grammatical gender.

Natural gender is divided according to sex into masculine and feminine. This is with reference to persons and animals only. The words *chlap* (fellow) and *kôň* (horse) are of the natural masculine gender, because they indicate an individual and an animal of the male sex. Similarly, the words *žena* (woman) and *sliepka* (hen) are of the natural feminine gender as they indicate an individual and an animal of the female sex.

Grammatical gender, however, exists in all the nouns, i.e. not only in the names of persons and animals. Names of plants, inanimate objects, names of qualities and concepts, have also their grammatical gender. Compare, for example, pairs of words with a similar meaning but of different genders: *hora*, fem. (forest) – *les*, masc. (forest), *budova*, fem. (building) – *dom*, masc. (house), *skala*, fem. (rock) – *kameň*, masc. (stone), *rieka*, fem. (river) – *potok*, masc. (brook) etc. Also loan words and non-inflectional nouns in Slovak always belong to some gender, e.g. *safari* (neutr.), *tabu* (neutr.), *matiné* (neutr.), *menu* (neutr.).

Speaking of groups of human beings including both men and women, the masculine noun is used. This may refer to :

a) members of nations, e.g. *Slováci* (the Slovaks), *Rusi* (the Russians), *Česi* (the Czechs), *Angličania* (the English);

b) members of special-interest, political and other social groups, e.g. *priatelía* (friends), *občania* (citizens), *členovia* (members), *súperi* (rivals), *kresťania* (Christians), *komunisti* (communists), *demokrati* (democrats), *liberáli* (liberals), *socialisti* (socialists), *susedia* (neighbours), *študenti* (students), etc.;

c) paired kins etc., e.g. *rodičia* (parents), *manželia* (husband and wife), *snúbenci* (engaged couple), *predkovia* (ancestors), etc.;

d) a family or a group of followers, e.g. *Šimekovci* (the Šimeks), *susedovci* (neighbours), *štúrovci* (the followers of Štúr).

Many names of animals of the masculine gender are used to indicate the males as well as the females, and vice versa: masc.: *pes* (dog), *kôň* (horse), *holub* (pigeon), *vrabec* (sparrow), *sokol* (falcon), *havran* (raven), *pstruh* (trout), *kapor* (carp), *had* (snake); fem.: *žaba* (frog), *veverička* (squirrel), *mačka* (cat), *vrana* (crow).

Masculine animal nouns in the plural are regarded and declined as if they were inanimate. The names *psi* (dogs), *vlci* (wolves), *vtáci* (birds) sometimes have the animate forms.

Some masculine inanimate nouns take the masculine animate form in the accusative singular. This phenomenon is called animization.

In the standard language these forms occur particularly in arithmetical concepts as e.g. *činiteľ* (factor), *menovateľ* (denominator), *deliteľ* (divisor), *mocniteľ* (exponent).

Such names as *činiteľ* (factor), *deliteľ* (divisor), *mocniteľ* (exponent), *násobiteľ* (multiplier) take both the animate as well as the inanimate forms in the dative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural, e.g. dative *deliteľovi/deliteľu* (to the divisor), the nominative plural *deliteľia/delitele* (divisors). In the locative singular the inanimate forms are the more common: *v deliteľi* (in the divisor), *v násobiteli* (in the multiplier).

In dialectal speech these forms occur particularly in:

1. names of trees and pieces of wood, e.g. *dub* (oak), *strom* (tree), *stĺp* (column), *rebrík* (ladder);

2. names of edible fungi, e.g. *hríb* (mushroom);

3. names of some diseases, e.g. *vred* (ulcer), *rak* (cancer).

Many names of male individuals become the names of things, they are depersonified. In the declension this transfer from animate to inanimate nouns is expressed in different ways.

Names of statues, buildings and pictures named after persons are declined as animate nouns, e.g. *lavička pri Leninovi* (i.e. the bench near Lenin's statue).

Names of holidays have the local singular after inanimate nouns, e.g. *o Michale* (on Michaelmas day), *po Matejovi* (after St Matthew's day).

Names of villages and cities named after persons are declined as inanimate nouns: *k Jánu* (to Ján), *pri Mikuláši* (near Mikuláš).

Masculine animate nouns indicating things have the accusative singular according to the animate nouns, e.g. *stratiť v šachoch pešiaka, jazdca* (to lose a pawn, a knight in chess).

Names of mechanical appliances formed by suffixes normally used to form masculine animate nouns, are declined as inanimate: *vodiče* (conductors), *zdviháky* (lifts).

Some feminine nouns refer both to male and female individuals and animals. They are particularly:

1. the nouns: *rodina* (family), *sirota* (orphan), *osoba* (person);
2. the collective nouns: *mládež* (youth), *žobrač* (beggars), *Slovač* (the Slovaks), *mlaď* (youth).

Many animal nouns have no special names for males and females. The feminine (or masculine, see above) noun is used for both sexes, e.g. *myš* (mouse), *ryba* (fish), *opica* (monkey), *žaba* (frog), *zmijsa* (viper), *vrana* (crow), *sova* (owl).

In addition to Slovak neuter nouns the following nouns and constructions are treated as neuter:

1. non-inflectional nouns taken from foreign languages, e.g. *matiné*, *resumé*, *dementi*, *menu*, *safari*;
2. phrases and sentences used instead of nouns, e.g. *To je také „nič“*. (That's "a nothing".) *Nemôžem už znieť to jeho večné „prídem, prídem“*. (I can't bear any more his everlasting "I'll come, I'll come".)

Some nouns occur in colloquial speech and in poetic style in two genders; they also differ in their forms. E.g. *rázcestie* – *rázcesta* (crossroads), *náručie* – *náruč* (arms), *priehrstie* – *priehršť* (handful).

## GRAMMATICAL NUMBER

In Slovak there are two numbers, the singular and the plural. The basic use of the singular is reference to one object. The singular may also be used generically when a whole class of objects is referred to, e.g. *človek* (man), *pstruh* (trout), *jedľa* (fir-tree).

The singular is also used with the names of materials and plants which are not countable, e.g. *zlato* (gold), *železo* (iron), *drevo* (wood), *hlina* (clay), *voda* (water), *víno* (wine), *mrkva* (carrot), *tráva* (grass), *slama* (straw). If a single piece of a plant or a piece of material is to be indicated, it is expressed by means of a noun or an adverb of measure. E.g. *meter súkna* (one meter of cloth), *kus mäsa* (piece of meat), *zrnko striebra* (grain of silver), *hlávka kapusty* (cabbage-head).

Furthermore, the singular is used to refer to abstract entities like qualities and states, e.g. *láska* (love), *únava* (weariness), *nenávisť* (hate), *hnev* (anger), *sloboda* (freedom).

In special cases some nouns currently used in the singular, may be used in the plural as well. Such may be the case:

1. When abstract names for a state or quality are used metaphorically to indicate some concrete objects. E.g. *mať mnoho lások* (to have many loves).
2. When various objects of the same class or same measures and quantities of the same matter are indicated. E.g. *mať na sklade minerálne vody* (to have mineral



waters in stock), *zjesť dve mäsa* (to eat two pieces of meat), *vypit' dve pivá* (to drink two beers).

Some nouns are plural in construction but singular in meaning, e.g. *raňajky* (breakfast). These are the *plur alia tantum*. Such are particularly: some place-names: *Košice, Levice, Piešťany, Michalovce*; most mountain-ranges: *Tatry* (the Tatras), *Alpy* (the Alps); names of holidays, time periods, festivals: *Vianoce* (Christmas), *prázdniny* (holidays); names of some implements and a few designating parts of a house: *hrable* (rake), *kliešče* (tongs), *nožnice* (scissors), *vidly* (pitchfork), *okuliare* (glasses), *husle* (violin), *dvere* (door), *vráta* (gate); names of some body organs or anatomical parts: *pľúca* (lungs), *prsia* (breast), *ústa* (mouth); names of items of clothing: *nohavice* (trousers), *gate* (pants), *traky* (braces); names of diseases: *suchoty* (tuberculosis), *osýpky* (measles); names of plants: *ríbezle* (currant), names of some uncountable items: *piliny* (sawdust), *pomyje* (slops), *smeti* (sweepings).

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS

The declension of nouns refers to the alteration of case suffixes, with regard to their gender and number. The noun (masculine, feminine or neuter) usually forms a complete paradigm, i.e. six case forms in the singular and six in the plural. A case morpheme is attached to a given base.

In declension the base or stem of noun usually remains unaltered (*chlap-∅*, *chlap-a... chlap-i*, *chlap-ov...*); sometimes, however, individual sounds are altered (*vojak-∅ – vojac-i*; *žen-a – žien-∅*). And in some rare cases even the base is modified (*človek-∅ – ľud-ia*).

In contemporary Slovak we distinguish numerous declension paradigms.

According to the grammatical gender Slovak nouns are divided into masculine (animate or inanimate), feminine and neuter nouns and each of these groups has several paradigms.

## The Masculine Gender

Masculine nouns may be declined according to four paradigms – two for animate masculine nouns (“chlap” – fellow, “hrdina” – hero) and two for inanimate masculine nouns (“dub” – oak, “stroj” – machine).

### The Animate Paradigms

Sg. N.	chlap-∅, ded-o	hrdin-a
G.	chlap-a	hrdin-u
D.	chlap-ovi	hrdin-ovi

A.	chlap-a	hrdin-u
L. (o)	chlap-ovi, člověk-u	(o) hrdin-ovi
I.	chlap-om	hrdin-om
Pl. N.	chlap-i, ded-ovia	hrdin-ovia, poet-i
G.	chlap-ov	hrdin-ov
D.	chlap-om	hrdin-om
A.	chlap-ov	hrdin-ov
L. (o)	chlap-och, otc-och	(o) hrdin-och
I.	chlap-mi, otc-ami	hrdin-ami, poet-mi

### The Inanimate Paradigms

Sg. N.	dub-∅	stroj-∅
G.	dub-a, mak-u	stroj-a, čaj-u
D.	dub-u	stroj-u
A.	dub-∅	stroj-∅
L. (o)	dub-e, mak-u, hotel-i	(o) stroj-i
I.	dub-om	stroj-om
Pl. N.	dub-y	stroj-e
G.	dub-ov, Sučian-∅	stroj-ov, Levár-∅
D.	dub-om	stroj-om
A.	dub-y	stroj-e
L. (o)	dub-och	(o) stroj-och
I.	dub-mi, dom-ami	stroj-mi, lakt-ami

### The Paradigm “chlap”

Animate masculine nouns are declined according to the paradigm “chlap” when their nominative singular ends:

a) in a consonant: *brat* (brother), *muž* (man), *sused* (neighbour), *stolár* (carpenter), *Slovák* (Slovak), *Rus* (Russian), *Jozef*, *Ján*;

b) in the vowel -o, in the case of some common nouns: *dedo* (grandfather), *ujo* (uncle); some first names: *Jano*, *Paľo*; some foreign surnames: *Picasso*, *Makarenko* and some native surnames: *Krasko*, *Krno*, *Galko*;

c) in the case of foreign names – in -as, -es, -os, -us which are sometimes omitted: *Pythagoras* – *Pytagora*, *Sokrates* – *Sokrata*, *Herodotos* – *Herodota*, *Ovidius* – *Ovídia*, *génus* – *génia* and sometimes retained: *fiškus* – *fiškusa*, *Július* – *Júliusa*, or have two forms: *Herkules* – *Herkula* but also *Herkulesa*;

d) in the case of foreign masculine nouns – in -ó, -o, -u, -ú, -ü, -ou, -au: *Szabó* – *Szabóa*, *Rousseau* – *Rousseaua*, as well as those whose base becomes altered: *Noe* – *Noema*, *pontifex* – *pontifika*.

The singular of animal masculine nouns (common) take the plural of inanimate nouns, e.g. *sokol – sokola, holub – holuba, had – hada, zajac – zajaca, medveď – medveďa, vrabec – vrabca*... Three nouns may have both the inanimate and the animate forms in the *pes, vlk, vták*: *tí chlapi – psi, vlci, vtáci, tie duby – psy, vlky, vtáky*.

In some words of the declension the vowel *e* may shift its position, i.e. is a fleeting vowel: *žnec – ženca, švec – ševca*; sometimes there is elision of the vowels *e, o, or i*: *vrabec – vrabca, Zúbek – Zúbka, Adamec – Adamca* but *Šulek – Šuleka*, or the two forms may occur: *Wolker – Wolkra or Wolkera, nováčik – nováčka or nováčika*.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “chlap” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-∅	-a	-ovi	-a	-ovi	-om
Pl.	-i	-ov	-m	-ov	-och	-mi

The characteristic ending for the dative and locative singular of the masculine animate nouns is *-ovi*, e.g. *otcovi, bratovi, žiakovi, priateľovi*.

Apart from the basic ending (*-ovi*) the ending *-u* is used in some words, e.g. *bohu, človeku, duchu, čertu, pánu* (*pán* used with a name has always the ending *-u*: *pánu doktorovi*, but *tomu pánovi*).

A separate vocative case form does not exist in Slovak any more. There are some remainders, but these are understood only as variants of the vocative nominative: *švagr – švagre, priateľ – priateľu*. The form *pane* is used only in a ceremonious style and in the customary salutation in letter writing (*Vážený pane*).

The nominative plural of the paradigm “chlap” has the ending *-i* and the variants *-ia, -ovia*.

The ending *-i* is basic and the most frequent: *muži, pretekári, majstri*. It is important to remember that before this ending the consonants *k, ch* are changed into *c, s* respectively: *žiak – žiaci, vojak – vojaci, valach – valasi*.

But most nouns ending in *-an, -čan, -teľ* in the singular take *-ia*: *Slovania, Bratislavčania, občania, priatelia, učitelia, čitatelia*... and also some other words: *bratia, ľudia, hostia, manželia, rodičia, susedia*...; but words ending in *-ič* take most frequently *-i*: *hasiči, buriči, holiči*...

The ending *-ovia* occurs in the nominative plural particularly in words ending in *-o, -h or -g* (*dedovia, Janovia, Ferovia, súdruhovia, pedagógovia*); then in given names, names of relatives and in others: *Petrovia, synovia, duchovia, členovia, agronómovia or agronómi*.

In the genitive and accusative plural the word *ľudia* has the form *ľudí*, while the word *hosť* may take the form *hostí* or less frequently *hostov*.

The instrumental plural of the paradigm “chlap” has the ending *-mi* and its variant *-ami*.

The ending *-mi* is basic, e.g. *žiakmi, učiteľmi, Slovákmí, Trnavčanmi, lexikografmi, nováčikmi, asistentmi, pacientmi, chirurgmi*...

A less frequent ending in the instrumental plural is *-ami*: it occurs in nouns ending in *-m* (*agronóm – agronómami, astronóm – astronómami*...), in those ending in *-o*

or *-ius* (*dedo – dedami, Ďuro – Ďurami, génius – geniami*); in nouns with the fleeting vowel or with elisions (*chodec – chodcami, obor – obrami*) and after a consonant cluster (*host – hostami*).

### The Paradigm “*hrdina*”

According to the paradigm “*hrdina*” are declined masculine animate nouns ending in *-a*, e.g. *vodca* (leader), *socialista* (socialist), *kolega* (colleague), *sluha* (man-servant), *Chalupka, Mácha, Neruda...*

Slovak surnames ending in *-o* have two forms and may be declined according to both the animate paradigms, e.g. *Krasko – Kraska* and also *Krasku, Krno – Krna* and also *Krnu* etc.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “*hrdina*” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-a	-u	-ovi	-u	-ovi	-om
Pl.	-ovia	-ov	-om	-ov	-och	-ami

Variants occur in the nominative singular (*-a, -o*), in the nominative plural (*-ovia, -i*) and in the instrumental plural (*-ami, -mi*).

In the nominative plural the basic ending is *-ovia*, e.g. *dôchodcovia, sluhovia, kolegovia...*

Loan words in *-ta, -ista* and *-ita* in the nominative singular have the nominative plural in *-i*, e.g. *poeta – poeti, marxista – marxisti, klavirista – klaviristi, husita – husiti*. Slovak native words in *-ta* have the plural in *-ovia*: *tata – tatovia, starosta – starostovia...*

In the instrumental plural of the paradigm “*hrdina*” the basic ending is *-ami*, e.g. *kolegami, predsedami...*

The ending *-mi* in the instrumental plural occurs only in foreign words in *-ta* with a preceding vowel, e.g. *poeta – poetmi*.

### The Paradigm “*dub*”

According to the paradigm “*dub*” we decline masculine inanimate nouns

a) ending in the nominative singular in a hard or neutral consonant, e.g. *dom* (house), *strom* (tree), *potok* (brook), *viator* (wind), *Hron...* but also the pluralia tantum, e.g. *preteky* (competition), *Piešťany*, and loan words, e.g. *motor, alkohol, titul, detail, futbal...*;

b) loan words (inanimate) ending in *-us, -os, -es*, which are sometimes omitted (*komunizmus – komunizmu, marxizmus – marxizmu*), but sometimes they remain (*circus – cirkusu, autobus – autobusu, chaos – chaosu...*);

c) animal nouns in the plural (in the singular they are declined as “*chlap*”) if they end in a hard or neutral consonant, e.g. *sokol – sokoly, slon – slony, had – hady, kamzík – kamzíky...*

Some words ending in *-r, -l* are declined according to the paradigm “dub”, some according to the paradigm “stroj”, or they can have mixed declensions.

The long stem vowel or a diphthong is shortened in some words: *mráz – mrazu, vietor – vetra, stôl – stola, chlieb – chleba*. In some words, on the other hand, there is a fleeting vowel (especially in words ending in *-íček, -ok, -ík*): *ohníček – ohnička, dnešok – dneška, priemysel – priemyslu, ocot – octu, chrbát – chrbta...*

The most conspicuous feature in the paradigm “dub” is the ending *-y* in the nominative plural, by which it is evidently distinguished from the paradigm “stroj” (nom. pl. *stroje*). The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “dub” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	∅	-a	-u	-∅	-e	-om
Pl.	-y	-ov	-om	-y	-och	-mi

Variants of endings in the paradigm “dub” occur in the genitive singular (*-a, -u*), in the locative singular (*-e, -u, -i*), in the genitive plural (*-ov, -∅*) and in the instrumental plural (*-mi, -ami*).

In the genitive singular apart from the ending *-e*, also the ending *-u* is used. There is no precise rule for their usage.

The ending *-a* is used with concrete nouns, especially those that can be counted (*klobúka, chleba, voza...*, but *domu, hradu...*); with the names of the months (*januára, februára, marca...*); with nouns ending in *-ík, -ák (slovníka, padáka...)*; with place names ending in *-m, -ov, -ev (Ríma, Postupima, Leopoldova, Kyjeva...)*; with nouns made animate in colloquial speech (*duba, javora, hríba, vreda, góla...*) and in some others.

The ending *-u* is used with material uncountable nouns (*hrachu, cukru, medu, maku...*) and especially with abstract nouns (*letu, kriku, hnevu...*); furthermore, with all the common nouns ending in *-m (domu, stromu, pojmu...)*, with loan words ending in *-x (indexu, komplexu...)*, with some geographical names ending in *-z, -hrad, or -grad, -horod, -gorod (Prievozu, Bolerázu, Leningradu, Užhorodu...)*, with some names of plants (*petržlenu, cesnaku...*) and in some others.

Some words have two forms in the genitive singular, e.g. *kaktus – kaktusa* or *kaktusu, trolejbus – trolejbusa* or *trolejbusu, Alžír – Alžíra* or *Alžíru, bok – boka* or *boku, utorok – utorka* or *utorku, piatok – piatka* or *piatku, rok – roka* or *roku* and others.

In the locative singular, the endings *-u* and *-i* are used besides the ending *-e*.

The ending *-e* is basic for the locative of nouns declined on the paradigm “dub”; e.g. *pri dome, o dube, v kúte, vo futbale, v bare, v motore...* This ending is also used in native words ending in *-iel, -el, e.g. oddiel – o oddiele, zmysel – o zmysle* and others.

The ending *-u* is used in nouns ending in *-k, -g, -h, -ch (na boku, vo vlaku, v Hamburgu, o strachu...)*.

The ending *-i* is used in loan words ending in *-el, -ér* (and some in *-er*) with a fixed (not fleeting) vowel (*hotel – v hoteli, fotel – vo foteli, model – na modeli, éter – v éteri, revolver – o revolveri...*), in many words of foreign origin ending in *-ál (ideál – o ideáli, kapitál – pri kapitáli, lokál – v lokáli...)* and in others.

In the genitive plural of the paradigm “dub” the ending *-ov* is used as well as the zero ending.

The ending *-ov* is basic here, e.g. *domov, stromov, zubov...*

The ending *-ovis* is less frequent in the pluralia tantum when these are proper nouns (more frequent here is the zero ending). It is used especially in those place-names which still show some connection with the corresponding common nouns of the masculine gender, e.g. *Kúty – Kútov, Mlynčeky – Mlynčekov* etc.

The zero ending *-ø* in the genitive plural is usual for most pluralia tantum. Such are particularly names ending in *-any*. The vowel *a* is here lengthened and changed into the diphthong *ia* (*Margecany – Margecian, Chynorany – Chynorian*) and only in words ending in *-kany* and *-jany* it is changed into *á* (*Krškany – Krškán, Vozokany – Vozokán, Vojany – Voján...*).

The zero ending in the genitive plural is also used in names ending in *-íky, -áky, -iaky* (*Nováky – Novák, Diviaky – Diviak*) and some others, e.g. *Kropachy – Kropách, Žabokreky – Žabokriek* etc.

In the locative plural the ending *-och* is basic: *duboch, radoch, domoch, smeroch, brehoch...*

In the instrumental plural of the paradigm “dub” the ending *-mi* as well as the variant *-ami* are used.

The ending *-mi* is basic here: *dubmi, krokmi, motívmi...* It is usual also for the nouns whose stems end in one consonant (except *-m*) or in *-x*, e.g. *dubmi, krokmi, indexmi...* As a rule the ending *-mi* is used also in nouns whose stems end in a consonant cluster: *parlamentmi, variantmi, konsonantmi, vrchmi...*

The ending *-ami* in the instrumental plural is used with nouns whose stem ends in *-m* or if *-m* precedes the last stem consonant (*domami, stromami, záznamami*); also with nouns that have the stem with the fleeting vowels *e, o, i, á* (*následok – následkami, vtáčik – vtáčkami*). It is also used with nouns that end in *-ius, -eus* in the nominative singular, or with animal nouns ending in *-o* (*sestercius – sesterciami, zajko – zajkami*). Sometimes the ending *-ami* is also used in nouns whose stem ends in two fricative consonants (*most – mostami* and also *mostmi, prst – prstami* and also *prstmi, necht – nechtami...*), but also in some other words: *zubami, orechami, schodami...*

## The Paradigm “stroj”

According to the paradigm “stroj” we decline inanimate masculine nouns:

a) ending in a soft consonant in the nominative singular, e.g. *dážď* (rain), *kameň* (stone), *cieľ* (aim), *kôš* (basket), *máj* (May) or pluralia tantum ending in *-e*, e.g. *Ladce, Tlmače...*;

b) some inanimate nouns ending in *-r, -l* in the nominative singular, e.g. *január, pulóver, motocykel, artikel*;

c) masculine animal nouns whose stem ends in a soft consonant and in *-ár*, e.g. *kôň* (horse), *medveď* (bear), *mravec* (ant), *jaguár* (jaguar).

In words ending in *-ec, -iec* and in some others the so-called fleeting vowel occurs,

e.g. *marec – marca, veniec – venca, stupeň – stupňa, lakeť – lakťa...* The fleeting vowel *-e-* is also found in words ending in *-er, -el* and in some words ending in *-or*, e.g. *liter – litra, október – októbra, semester – semestra, bicykel – bicykla, kufor – kufra* etc.

In some words the long stem vowel or the diphthong is shortened: *dážď – dažďa, nôž – noža, kôš – koša, kôň – koňa*.

The mixed declension is found in some loan words, especially in those ending in *-al, -ál, -er, -ér*, e.g. *ideál (o ideáli – naše ideály), hotel (v hoteli – dva hotely) buldozér (na buldozéri – dva buldozéry)*.

The basic system of the case endings in the paradigm “stroj” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-∅	-a	-u	-∅	-i	-om
Pl.	-e	-ov	-om	-e	-och	-mi

Variants of endings are found in the genitive singular (*-a, -u*), in the genitive plural (*-ov, -i, -∅*) and in the instrumental plural (*-mi, -ami*).

In the genitive singular the ending *-a* is used, less frequent is the variant *-u*.

The ending *-a* in the genitive singular of the masculine nouns in the paradigm “stroj” is basic, e.g. *zdroja, vozňa, noža...*

The ending *-u* in the genitive singular is used only in a limited number of nouns. They are material and abstract nouns: *čaju, chmeľu, plaču, rúžu, žiaľu...*

In the genitive plural the basic ending is *-ov*, but there are also the variants *-í* and *-∅* in this paradigm.

The ending *-ov* in nouns of the paradigm “stroj” is the most frequent: *nožov, štetcov, vozňov, rúžov* etc.

The ending *-í* is limited here to the words *deň – dní, kôň – koní, peniaz – peňazí*.

In the instrumental plural of nouns declined on the paradigm “stroj” the ending *-mi* is basic, but the variant *-ami* also occurs.

The ending *-mi* is basic: *zdrojmi, plačmi, čajmi, prameňmi, žiaľmi...*

The ending *-ami* is used with nouns whose stem ends in two consonants (*plášť – plášťami, dážď – dažďami...*) or with nouns with the fleeting vowels *e, o* (*štetec – štetcami, orchester – orchestrami, šiator – šiatrami...*).

## The Feminine Gender

In the feminine gender we distinguish four basic paradigms (“žena” – woman, “ulica” – street, “dlaň” – palm, “kosť” – bone). Apart from these, two others, known as “mixed” paradigms have developed (“gazdiná” – housewife, “idea”). The basic paradigms are divided into two groups according to their endings (in the nominative singular): the paradigm for nouns ending in a vowel (“žena, ulica”) and those for nouns ending in a consonant (“dlaň, kosť”).

## The Vowel Paradigms

Sg.	N.	žen-a		ulic-a
	G.	žen-y		ulic-e
	D.	žen-e		ulic-i
	A.	žen-u		ulic-u
	L. (o)	žen-e	(o)	ulic-i
	I.	žen-ou		ulic-ou
Pl.	N.	žen-y		ulic-e
	G.	žien-∅, medailí		ulic-∅, ban-í
	D.	žen-ám		ulic-iam
	A.	žen-y		ulic-e
	L. (o)	žen-ách	(o)	ulic-iach
	I.	žen-ami		ulic-ami

## The Consonant Paradigms

Sg.	N.	dlaň-∅		kost-∅
	G.	dlan-e		kost-i
	D.	dlan-i		kost-i
	A.	dlaň-∅		kost-∅
	L. (o)	dlan-i	(o)	kost-i
	I.	dlaň-ou		kost-ou
Pl.	N.	dlan-e		kost-i
	G.	dlan-í		kost-í
	D.	dlan-iam		kost-iam
	A.	dlan-e		kost-i
	L. (o)	dlan-iach	(o)	kost-iach
	I.	dlaň-ami		kost-ami

## The Mixed Paradigms

Sg.	N.	gazdin-á		ide-a
	G.	gazdin-ej		ide-y
	D.	gazdin-ej		ide-i
	A.	gazdin-ú		ide-u
	L. (o)	gazdin-ej	(o)	ide-i
	I.	gazdin-ou		ide-ou
Pl.	N.	gazdin-é		ide-y
	G.	gazdín-∅		ide-í



D.	gazdin-ám	ide-ám
A.	gazdin-é	ide-y
L. (o)	gazdin-ách	(o) ide-ách
I.	gazdin-ami	ide-ami

For the feminine nouns ending in a vowel, we have two paradigms (“žena, ulica”). Differences occur in orthography (the “hard” paradigm has -y, while “soft” paradigm has always -i in endings). They also differ in the fact, that in the “hard” declension there is always the ending -a while in the “soft” declension the ending -ia is used. Both consonant paradigms are “soft”, thus the feminine nouns ending in the nominative singular in a consonant always have -í, never -y in the endings. The paradigm “gazdiná” and “idea” represent a special case. The paradigm “gazdiná” has the noun endings according to “žena” as well as the adjectival endings as in the paradigm “pekný – pekná – pekné”. In the paradigm “idea” some endings are the same as in the paradigm “žena”, while the others are formed according to the paradigm “ulica” – and the hard -y or the soft -i endings are used accordingly.

### The Paradigm “žena”

According to the paradigm “žena” we decline feminine nouns:

a) which have the ending -a in the nominative singular after a hard or neutral consonant, e.g. *matka* (mother), *robotá* (work), *budová* (building), *sestra* (sister), *dráma* (drama), *Anna*, *Európa* etc.; pluralia tantum ending in -y in the nominative plural, e.g. *noviny* (newspaper), *prázdniny* (holidays), *Tatry*, *Apeniny*...

b) foreign nouns ending in -a after the vowel o or u in the nominative singular: *kongrua*, *Nicaragua*, *Goa*, *aloe*...

c) some other foreign nouns ending in the nominative singular in a consonant, where two forms are often used, e.g. *Demeter* – *Demetry*, *Iris* – *Iridy* (and also the non-inflectional form). Here are also included some Latin and Greek feminine names ending in the nominative singular in -o: *Juno* – *Junóny*, *Gorgó* – *Gorgóny*.

The nouns *zora* (aurora), *žiara* (glow shining) are declined on the paradigm “žena” in most cases, but they have the ending -e in the nominative and accusative plural (according to the paradigm “ulica”): *zora* – *zore*, *žiara* – *žiare*.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “žena” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-a	-y	-e	-u	-e	-ou
Pl.	-y	-ø	-ám	-y	-ách	-ami

Because of the rhythmical rule the long endings in the dative and locative plural are changed into short -am and -ach.

In the genitive plural there are two possible forms of endings: 1. the ending -ø, 2. the ending -í.

In the forms with the zero ending we must distinguish: the zero ending with a lengthening of the last stem syllable (if it is not long already) or the zero ending with the insertion of a fleeting vowel.

a) The forms with the zero ending and with the lengthening of the last stem syllable are the most frequent in nouns declined on the paradigm “žena”. The stem vowels *a, i (y), u* and the syllabic *r, l* are lengthened to *á, í (ý), ú, ř, í* and the vowels *ä, e, o* are changed into the diphthongs *ia, ie, ô*; similarly, *a* after a soft consonant is changed into *ia*. In this way the forms of nouns are altered so that their stems end in one consonant or in a group of consonants (which can stand at the end of the word) and the noun is not divided into the stem and derivational suffix, e.g. *sila – sil, skala – skál, vražda – vrážd, chyba – chýb, ruka – rúk, fakulta – fakúlt, slza – sĺz, brzda – bŗzd* etc. If the last stem syllable is long, it remains unchanged, e.g. *brána – brán, kríza – kríz, póza – póz, hviezda – hviezd* etc.

The last syllable is not lengthened after a preceding long syllable (*záhrada – záhrad, priehrada – priehrad, úroda – úrod...*);

in words whose stem ends in *-ov* (*stanova – stanov, budova – budov...*);

in words with the vowel *o* after the consonant *j* (*obhajoba – obhajob*);

in loan words with the stem vowels *e, o* (*konzerva – konzerv, agenda – agend, plomba – plomb...*).

b) The genitive plural with the zero ending but with a fleeting vowel is also frequent: if the stem ends in a group of consonants that cannot stand at the end of the word, or if there is a boundary between the stem and the derivational suffix inside the consonant group. As the inserted vowels we use: the diphthong *ie*, the vowels *o* or *e*, rarely the diphthong *ô* and the long *á*.

The diphthong *ie* is inserted in non-syllabic stems or in stems of more than one syllable after a preceding short syllable (but not after the consonant *j*), e.g. *matka – matiek, hra – hier, farba – farieb, prosba – prosieb, výnimka – výnimiek...*

The vowel *o* is inserted after a preceding long syllable, or after the consonant *j* if neither of the consonants *m, n, l, r, v* follows, e.g. *látka – látok, spojka – spojok, čiapka – čiapok, robotníčka – robotníčok...*

The vowel *e* is inserted after a preceding long syllable or after the consonant *j* if some of the consonants *m, n, l, r, v* follows. If the consonant *j* does not precede, two forms are possible: the regular forms with the inserted *e*, as well as the forms with the inserted *ie*, e.g. *výhra – výher* as well as *výhier*, but *vojna – vojen...*

The diphthong *ô* as well as the diphthong *ie* can be inserted after the labial consonant if a short syllable precedes, e.g. *jamka – jamôk* as well as *jamiek, čipka – čipôk* and also *čipiek, kvapka – kvapôk* and also *kvapiék...*

The vowel *á* as well as the diphthong *ie* can be used if a short syllable precedes, e.g. *karta – karát* and also *kariet, sestra – sestár* and also *sestier, slivka – slivák* and also *sliviek...*

In the paradigm “žena” the ending *-í* for the genitive plural is rare, e.g. *medaila – medailí, pera – perí* (also *pier*)... This ending is used especially in loan nouns ending in *-ia, -ua*, e.g. *kongrua – kongruí, Perpetua – Perpetuí, aloa – aloí...*

## The Paradigm “ulica”

According to the paradigm “ulica” we decline feminine nouns

a) ending in the nominative singular in *-a* with a preceding soft consonant, e.g. *baňa* (mine), *vôľa* (will), *knížnica* (library), *ríša* (empire), *Prievidza*, *Trója*, *Venuša*... ; pluralia tantum : *Vianoce* (Christmas), *nohavice* (trousers), *Košice*... ;

b) loan nouns ending in *-ia*, *-ya*, e.g. *akcia*, *revolúcia*, *demokracia*, *Líbya*, *Mária*... and some pluralia tantum : *financie*, *orgie*... ;

c) some nouns with a neutral consonant before the ending *-a*. They are e.g. *večera* (supper) and some pluralia tantum : *dvere* (door)...

Here also belong some loan words, as for example *Bologna*, *Campagna* (pronounced *boloňa*, *kampaňa*).

The nouns *zora* and *žiara* are declined on the paradigm “žena” but they have *-e* at the end in the nominative and accusative plural (according to the paradigm “ulica”) : *zora* – *zore*, *žiara* – *žiare*.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “ulica” is :

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-a	-e	-i	-u	-i	-ou
Pl.	-e	-ø	-iam	-e	-iach	-ami

Because of the rhythmical rule, the plural endings in the dative and locative are changed into *-am* and *-ach*. Apart from this, the word *dvere* has in the dative and locative plural the endings with the long *-á-* : *dvere* – *dverám* – *dverách*. The long endings (never shortened) are found in loan words ending in *-ia* in the nominative singular : *organizácia* – *organizáciám* – *organizáciách*.

The genitive plural in the paradigm “ulica” is formed by the endings *-ø* and *-í*.

1. In the forms with the zero ending, we distinguish two ways : a) the zero ending and lengthening the last stem syllable (if it is not long), b) the zero ending and adding a fleeting vowel.

a) Words with the ending *-ø* and with a lengthening of the last stem syllable (if it is not long already) are quite frequent in the paradigm “ulica”. The stem vowels *a*, *i/y*, *u*, *e*, *o* and the syllabic *r* are lengthened and changed into *á*, *í/ý*, *ú*, *ie*, *ô*, *í* ; the vowel *a* after a soft consonant is changed into *ia*. But the stem syllable is not lengthened after a preceding long syllable (it remains short : *sietnica* – *sietnic* and others).

The genitive plural is formed in this way in feminine nouns :

ending in the nominative singular in *-ca* with a preceding vowel, especially *-i-*, e.g. *práca* – *prác*, *borovica* – *borovíc*, *svieca* – *sviec* ; pluralia tantum (ended in *-ce*) : *nohavice* – *nohavíc*... ;

ending in the nominative singular in *-yňa*, *-iňa* (others ending in *-ňa* usually have *-í*), e.g. *skriňa* – *skriň*, *kolegyňa* – *kolegýň*, *jaskyňa* – *jaskýň*... ;

ending in the nominative singular in *-Ia*, *-ča*, *-še* if the *l*, *č*, *š* is preceded by a vowel (or semi-vowel), also have the zero ending in the genitive plural, e.g. *košela* – *košiel*, *papuča* – *papuč*, *Krkonoše* – *Krkonôš* ; in some cases two forms may occur : *gula* – *gúl* and also *gulí*, *moruša* – *moruš* and also *moruší*... ;

zero ending with a lengthening of the stem syllable is also found in some other words, e.g. *garníža – garníž, dvere – dvier* and also *dverí...*

b) The ending *-ø* with the inserted vowel *-ie-* in the genitive plural is usual especially in the nouns pluralia tantum ending in *-ce* with a preceding consonant (*Bánovce – Bánoviec, Selce – Seliec...* and similarly *dverce – dveriec*, but also *ovca – ovce – oviec*).

Words ending in *-Ia, -ňa* with a preceding consonant may have the form either with the inserted *-ie*, or with the ending *-íni* in the genitive plural, e.g. *šabl'a – šabiel'or šablí, jedľa – jedlí, čerešňa – čerešieň or čerešní, sukňa – sukieň or sukni...*

2. Other words declined on the paradigm “ulica” have, in the genitive plural, the ending *-í* that is not even shortened after preceding long syllable (*vôňa – vôní, spálňa – spální...*). Such are particularly words ending in *-dza, -dža, -ža, -ča, -ťa, -ďa, -ja* and loan words ending in *-ia, -ya*, e.g. *schôdza – schôdzí, mreža – mreží, baganča – bagančí, kliešte – kliešti, akcia – akcií, divízia – divízií*. Here are also included many words ended in *-ša (duša – duší), -ňa (baňa – baní, vôňa – vôní, studňa – studní)*, all the words ending in *-ovňa (mincovňa – mincovní, ošetrovňa – ošetrovní...), -Ia (mandľa – mandlí, džungľa – džunglí...), -ca* and *-nca (pasca – pascí, minca – mincí, šanca – šancí)*, and a few others (*večera – večerí, dvere – dverí* and also *dvier*).

## The Paradigm “dlaň”

According to the paradigm “dlaň” we decline feminine nouns that end in the nominative singular in a consonant and have the ending *-e* in the genitive singular and also in the nominative (and accusative) plural. Here belong feminine nouns

a) ending in the nominative singular in the consonant *-ň, -j, -m, -dz, -z, -x, -č, -ž, -I, -ď, -š, -šť* (besides place-names *Budapešť, Bukurešť...*), e.g. *báseň* (poem), *obyčaj* (habit), *nádej* (hope), *mosadz* (brass), *haluz* (branch), *prax* (practice), *tlač* (press), *garáž* (garage), *ocel* (steel), *hrud'* (chest), *tíš* (silence), *húšť* (bush)... ;

b) the words *obec* (locality), *pec* (stove), *zem* (earth), *päsť* (fist).

Words ending in *-r* and *-ť* are declined on the paradigm “dlaň” or on that of “kost”. According to the paradigm “dlaň” we decline, for example, *tvár – tváre, niť – nite, sieť – siete, trať – trate...* Certain words may take two forms, e.g. *mysel – mysle* and also *myslí, raž – raži* (gen. sg.) and also *raže* (pl.).

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “dlaň” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-ø	-e	-i	-ø	-i	-ou
Pl.	-e	-í	-iam	-e	-iach	-ami

The rhythmical rule is applied in the case of the dative and locative (*továreň – továrniam – továrnach, pieseň – piesňam – piesňach*). Similarly there are the short endings *-am, -ach* used after *-j-* (*koľaj – koľajam – koľajach, esej – esejam – esejach*).

The case ending *-í* in the genitive plural is not shortened after a preceding long syllable, e.g. *pieseň – piesní, báseň – básní...*

In the declension according to the paradigm “*dlaň*” we can find the fleeting *-e-* in the words ending in *-eň, -áreň, -iareň, -izeň*, e.g. *úroveň – úrovne, Viedeň – Viedne, čakáreň – čakárne...*

## The Paradigm “*kost*”

According to the paradigm “*kost*” we decline all feminine nouns ending in a consonant in the nominative singular and in *-i* in the genitive singular, as well as in the nominative (and accusative) plural. They are:

a) the nouns ending in the nominative singular in *-c* (except *obec, pec*), in *-s, -p, -v, -st'* (except *čelust', pást'*), e.g. *moc* (power), *nemoc* (disease), *noc* (night), *pomoc* (help), *vec* (thing), *os* (axis), *krv* (blood), *bezpečnosť* (security), *povešť* (tale), *masť* (lard), *vlasť* (native country)...;

b) the place-names ending in the nominative singular in *-šť*, e.g. *Budapešť, Bukurešť...*;

c) some other words: *reč* (speech), *meď* (coper), *soľ* (salt), *myš* (mouse), *Sereď...*;

d) from among words ending in *-r, -ť* the following are declined on the paradigm “*kost*”: *jar* (spring), *zver* (beast), *chuť* (taste), *ortuť* (mercury), *pamäť* (memory), *smrť* (death).

There is a fleeting vowel (*e* or *o*) in some words, e.g. *česť* (honour) – *cti*, *cirkev* (church) – *cirkvi*, *ves* (village) *vsí*, *lož* (lie) – *lži*.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “*kost*” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-∅	-i	-i	-∅	-i	-ou
Pl.	-i	-í	-iam	-i	-iach	-ami

In all the endings of the consonant paradigm “*kost*” only *i* is used.

## The Paradigm “*gazdiná*”

According to the paradigm “*gazdiná*” we decline several feminine nouns formed from masculine nouns and ending in the nominative singular in *-ná, -ovná*. They include some names of relatives and words referring to some female members of the nobility, e.g. *švagriná* (sister-in-law), *stryná* (aunt), *kráľovná* (queen), *cárovná* (tsarina), *princezná* (princess) *cisárovná* (empress)...

The words *chyžná, komorná* (chambermaid) are declined on adjectival paradigms.

The system of case endings in the paradigm “gazdiná” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-á	-ej	-ej	-ú	-ej	-ou
Pl.	-é	-ø	-ám	-é	-ách	-ami

The genitive plural may have two forms: a) zero ending with the last stem syllable lengthened, or b) zero ending and an inserted diphthong. The former is used in words with a single consonant at the end of the stem: *švagríná* – *švagrín*, *stryná* – *stryń*... The latter is used in words with two consonants at the end of the stem: *kráľovná* – *kráľovien*, *princezná* – *princezien*...

### The Paradigm “idea”

According to the paradigm “idea” feminine nouns ending in the nominative singular in *-ea* are declined. This includes only a small number of loan words, e.g. *orchidea*, *Andrea*, *Bea*, *Guinea*, *Kórea*...

The system of case endings in the paradigm “idea” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-a	-y	-i	-u	-i	-ou
Pl.	-y	-í	-ám	-y	-ách	-ami

The feminine nouns *pani* and *mať* are declined irregularly.

Declension of the noun *pani*:

Sg.	<i>pani</i>	Pl.	<i>panie</i>
N.	<i>pani</i>		<i>panie</i>
G.	<i>panej</i>		<i>paní</i>
D.	<i>panej</i>		<i>paniam</i>
A.	<i>paniu</i>		<i>panie</i>
L. (o)	<i>panej</i>	(o)	<i>paniach</i>
I.	<i>paňou</i>		<i>paniami</i>

The word *pani* is not declined in the function of an attribute: *pani učiteľka* – *pani učiteľke*, *pani doktorka* – *pani doktorke*, *pani Elena* – *pani Elene*...

Declension of the noun *mať*:

Sg.	<i>mať, mati, mater</i>	Pl.	<i>matere</i>
N.	<i>mať, mati, mater</i>		<i>materi</i>
G.	<i>matere</i>		<i>materiam</i>
D.	<i>materi</i>		<i>matere</i>
A.	<i>mať, mater</i>		<i>materi</i>
L. (o)	<i>materi</i>	(o)	<i>materiach</i>
I.	<i>materou</i>		<i>materami</i>

## The Neuter Gender

The neuter gender distinguish the following paradigms: “mesto” (town), “srdce” (heart), “vysvedčenie” (certificate), “dievča” (girl).

	Sg.		Pl.
N.	mest-o		mest-á
G.	mest-a		miest-Ø, múze-í
D.	mest-u		mest-ám
A.	mest-o		mest-á
L. (o)	mest-e, uch-u	(o)	mest-ách
I.	mest-om		mest-ami

	Sg.		Pl.
N.	srdc-e		srdc-ia
G.	srdc-a		srdc-Ø, pol-í
D.	srdc-u		srdc-iam
A.	srdc-e		srdc-ia
L. (o)	srdc-i	(o)	srdc-iach
I.	srdc-om		srdc-ami

	Sg.		Pl.
N.	vysvedčen-ie		vysvedčen-ia
G.	vysvedčen-ia		vysvedčen-í
D.	vysvedčen-iu		vysvedčen-iam
A.	vysvedčen-ie		vysvedčen-ia
L. (o)	vysvedčen-í	(o)	vysvedčen-iach
I.	vysvedčen-ím		vysvedčen-iami

	Sg.		Pl.
N.	dievč-a		dievč-at-á    dievč-enc-e
G.	dievč-at-a		dievč-at-Ø    dievč-eniec-Ø
D.	dievč-at-u		dievč-at-ám    dievč-enc-om
A.	dievč-a		dievč-at-á    dievč-enc-e
L. (o)	dievč-at-i	(o)	dievč-at-ách    dievč-enc-och
I.	dievč-at-om		dievč-at-ami    dievč-enc-ami

Neuter nouns refer to things and (alongside with masculine and feminine nouns) to younglings (animal and human). They are divided according to their endings in the nominative singular.

### The Paradigm “mesto”

According to the paradigm “mesto” we decline neuter nouns:

a) ending in the nominative singular in the vowel -o, e.g. *slovo* (word), *lietadlo*

(airplane), *divadlo* (theatre), *pero* (pen), *zlato* (gold), *mlieko* (milk), *Slovensko*, *Polsko*, *Nemecko* (Germany), pluralia tantum : *ústa* (mouth), *železá* (fettlers), *vráta* (gate)... ;

b) loan nouns ending in the nominative singular in *-on*, *-um* (these endings are then omitted), e.g. *epiteton* – *epiteta*, *gymnázium* – *gymnázia*, *publikum* – *publika*...

The word *dátum* (date) is declined on either of two paradigms. With the meaning “date”, it is masculine : *dátum*, *v dátume*, *dátumy*... With the meaning “datum” it is neuter and is used only in the plural : *dáta*, *dát*, *dátam*...

The augmentative neuter nouns with the ending *-isko* may combine with a masculine or a feminine form of the attributive adjective, according to the noun from which they are derived : *veľký psisko* (big dog), *obrovská ručisko* (huge hand) ; the neuter form of the adjective is equally acceptable : *veľké psisko*, *obrovské ručisko*.

The words *bremeno* (burden), *plemeno* (race), *rameno* (arm), *semeno* (seed), *temeno* (the crown of the head) can also be used in their older forms : *bremä*, *plemä*, *ramä*, *semä*, *temä*.

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “mesto” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-o	-a	-u	-o	-e	-om
Pl.	-á	-Ø	-ám	-á	-ách	-ami

The basic ending for the locative singular is *-e*, e.g. (*v*) *meste*, (*o*) *slove*. The words *vnútro* (interior) and *nebo* (heaven) have the ending *-i*: *vo vnútri*, *v nebi*.

The ending *-u* in the locative singular is used:

a) in words in which one of the consonants *k*, *g*, *ch* or *h* precedes the nominative ending (*-o*, *-on*, *-um*), e.g. *mlieko* – *mlieku*, *Kongo* – *Kongu*, *ucho* – *uchu*, *publikum* – *publiku*... ;

b) in loan words in which the ending *-o*, *-on*, *-um* is preceded by a vowel, e.g. *kakao* – *kakau*, *štúdio* – *štúdiu*, *dno* – *dnu*, *múzeum* – *múzeu*...

In the genitive plural the endings *-Ø* and *-í* are used:

a) The zero ending is used in the genitive plural with a consequent lengthening of the last syllable (*a*, *i*, *y*, *u*, *r*, *l*, *ä*, *e*, *o* are changed into *á*, *í*, *ý*, *ú*, *ř*, *l*, *ia*, *ie*, *ô*) as follows :

in words with only one consonant at the end of the stem, e.g. *kladivo* – *kladív*, *zrno* – *zřn*, *jablko* – *jablĕ*, *teleso* – *telies*... ;

in words whose stem ends in a consonant cluster that is allowed at the end of the word and is not divided into the root and the derivative ending, e.g. *cesto* – *ciest*, *ihrisko* – *ihrisk*, *memorandum* – *memoránd*, *letisko* – *letisk*...

The last stem syllable in words with the zero ending is not modified

in words whose preceding syllable is long, e.g. *zámeno* – *zámen*, *priezvisko* – *priezvisk*... ;

in words whose stem ends in *-ov*, e.g. *slovo* – *slov*... ;

in loan words where the stem vowels *e*, *o* are not lengthened, e.g. *percento* – *percent*, *konto* – *kont*...

b) The zero ending and the fleeting vowel in the genitive plural are used in words



whose stem ends in a cluster of consonants that cannot stand at the end of the word, or if there is a boundary between the base of the word and the derivative suffix inside the group of consonants, e.g. *sklo – skiel, mydlo – mydiel, okienko – okienok...*

The diphthong *-ie-* and the vowels *-o-*, *-e-* (rarely *-é-*) are used as fleeting vowels.

The diphthong *-ie-* is used in the stem of one or more syllables after a preceding short syllable (but not after *j*), e.g. *sklo – skiel, mydlo – mydiel, družstvo – družstiev, nebezpečensstvo – nebezpečensstiev...*

The vowel *-o-* is used after a preceding long syllable or after the consonant *j* if none of the consonants *m, n, l, r, v* follows, e.g. *rebierno – rebiernok, čielko – čielok, lýtko – lýtok...*

The vowel *-e-* is used after a preceding long syllable or after the consonant *j* if one of the consonants *m, n, l, r, v* follows, e.g. *číslo – čísel, vlákno – vláken...* There are two possible forms in this case if the consonant *j* does not precede; apart from the forms with *-e-*, the forms with *-ie-* also exist, e.g. *číslo – čísel* or *čísiel, vlákno – vláken* or *vlákien...*

The words ending in *-stvo, -ctvo* have only the forms with *-ie-* (even after a preceding long syllable), e.g. *hospodárstvo – hospodárstiev, predsedníctvo – predsedníctiev...*

The case ending *-i* in the genitive plural is found in nouns which have a vowel (in pronunciation or only in writing) before the endings *-o, -on, -um* in the nominative singular, e.g. *rádio – rádií, štúdio – štúdií, gymnázium – gymnázií...*

The words *oko* and *ucho* are declined in two ways in the plural. In their original meaning (“eye”, “ear”) they are declined as follows:

N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
oči	očí/očú	očiam	oči	(v) očiach	očami
uši	uší/ušú	ušiam	uši	(v) ušiach	ušami

In their metaphorical meaning (e.g. “noose”; “handle”) the regular forms of the paradigm “mesto” are used here: *oká, uchá*, etc.

## The Paradigm “srdce”

According to the paradigm “srdce” we decline the neuter nouns that have the ending *-e* in the nominative singular (or the ending *-ia* in pluralia tantum), e.g. *pole* (field), *more* (sea), *letište* (airport), *pľúca* (lungs), *prsia* (breast).

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “srdce” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-e	-a	-u	-e	-i	-om
Pl.	-ia	-ø	-iam	-ia	-iach	-ami

In the genitive plural of the paradigm “srdce” the endings *-ø* and *-í* are used.

a) The zero ending with the last syllable lengthened, if not already long, forms the genitive plural

in words ending in *-ce* after a vowel or a syllable with *r, l*, e.g. *líce – líc, plece – pliec...* ;

in words ending in *-ište*, e.g. *schodište – schodišť, nástupište – nástupíšť, učilište – učilišť...*

The last stem syllable remains short in the genitive plural after a preceding long syllable, e.g. *riečište – riečišť...*

b) The genitive plural is formed by the zero ending and with the fleeting vowel in words ending in *-ce* after a consonant, except in the words having *r, l* in their stems.

The diphthong *-ie-* is inserted after a short syllable (not after the consonant *j*), e.g. *citoslovce – citosloviec...*

The vowel *-e-* is inserted after a long syllable or after the consonant *j*, e.g. *vajce – vajec...*

The rest of the nouns declined on the paradigm “*srdce*” have the ending *-í* in the genitive plural, e.g. *more – morí, pole – polí...*

### The Paradigm “*vysvedčenie*”

According to the paradigm “*vysvedčenie*” we decline neuter nouns ending in the nominative singular in *-ie*, e.g. *listie* (leaves), *údolie* (valley), *Pohronie*, *výročie* (anniversary), *hnutie* (movement), *čítanie* (reading), *písanie* (writing), *ovocie* (fruit)...

The system of case endings in the paradigm “*vysvedčenie*” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-ie	-ia	-iu	-ie	-í	-ím
Pl.	-ia	-í	-iam	-ia	-iach	-iami

In the paradigm “*vysvedčenie*” the case endings are not even shortened after a preceding long syllable (the rhythmical rule does not apply here), e.g. *prítmie – prítmi, ústie – o ústí, prútie – prútím...*

### The Paradigm “*dievča*”

According to the paradigm “*dievča*” we decline neuter nouns ending in *-a* or *-äin* the nominative singular, e.g. *zvíera* (animal), *tefa* (calf), *chlapča* (little boy), *knieža* (prince), *mláďa* (youngling), *holúbä* (young of the pigeon), *mača* (kitten), *vĺča* (wolf cub)...

The paradigm “*dievča*” has two forms in the plural: in one of them the affix *-at-* is added to the stem, in the other the affix *-enc-* is added, e.g. *psiča – psičatá* and also *psičence*, *vtáča – vtáčatá* and also *vtáčence*, *húsa – húsatá* or *húsence...*

The basic system of case endings in the paradigm “dievča” is:

	N.	G.	D.	A.	L.	I.
Sg.	-a	-ať-a	-ať-u	-a	-at-i	-ať-om
Pl. <sub>1</sub>	-at-á	-at-∅	-at-ám	-at-á	-at-ách	-at-ami
Pl. <sub>2</sub>	-enc-e	-eniec-∅	-enc-om	-enc-e	-enc-och	-enc-ami

The genitive plural may have two forms: 1. with the zero ending and the last stem syllable lengthened, 2. with the zero ending and the fleeting vowel. The rhythmical rule applies here.

1. The forms with the zero ending and the last stem syllable lengthened are used in words with the plural form ending in *-atá*, e.g. *jahňatá – jahňiat...* After a long syllable, however, the vowel in the given affix is not modified (the rhythmical rule applies), e.g. *dievčatá – dievčat, vnúčatá – vnúčat, zvieratá – zvierat...*

2. The forms with the zero ending and the fleeting vowel are used in words with the plural form ending in *-ence (-ce)*. The diphthong *-ie-* is inserted into the consonant cluster at the end of the stem, e.g. *dievčence – dievčeniec, vnúcence – vnúčenjec, telce – teliec...*

In the declension of the word *dieťa* (child) the following forms are used in the plural: N., A. *deti*, G. *detí*, D. *deťom*, L. (o) *deťoch*, I. *deťmi*.

## Loan Nouns

There is a tendency in Slovak to decline loan words according to the Slovak paradigms. Some exceptions, however, can be observed.

1. Some of the loan nouns are non-inflectional, i.e. remain invariable (*tabu, dementi, madame, miss, lady, jury, atašé, chargé d'affaires*).

2. Loan nouns in *-i (-y), -í, -e, -é, -ä* have the endings *-ho, -mu, -m* in the singular and in the plural they are declined on the paradigm “*hrdina*”. In this way, for example, the words: *Goethe, Dante, Škultéty, Curie...* are declined.

3. Proper names with adjectival endings in the Slavonic languages, are declined as adjectives, e.g. *Gorkij – Gorkého, Tolstoj – Tolstého, Rozwadowski – Rozwadowského...*

4. English and French nouns ending in the mute *-e* lose this *-e* in spelling when declined, e.g. *Shakespeare – Shakespeara, Hume – Huma...* But French and English nouns ending in *-ce, -ge, -che* retain the vowel *-e* in all the cases: *Laplace – Laplacea, Le Sage – Le Sagea...*

5. Hungarian names, as e.g. *Nagy, Király* (pronounce *naď, kiráj*) are declined on the paradigm “*chlap*”: *Nagy, Nagya, Nagyovi...*

## Substantivization, Derivation of Nouns

If an adjective, a numeral, an adverb or a verb is to become a noun, it must undergo a certain transformation. This can be done either by derivation, e.g. *orať* (to plough)

– *orba* (ploughing), *múdry* (wise) – *múdrosť* (wisdom), *zúfalý* (desperate) – *zúfalstvo* (despair) or by substantivization of the base and a possible alteration: *let* (flight), *skok* (jump), *úder* (beat), *červeň* (red), *zeleň* (green)... Substantivization occurs most frequently with adjectives, with cardinal and ordinal numerals, participles and possessive pronouns. Examples: *hlavný* (main – here: head-waiter), *chorý* (sick – here: patient), *chudobný* (poor), *plzenské* (here: Pilsner beer), *o tretej* (at three), *skúšajúci* (examiner), *kupujúci* (buyer)...

A permanent transition of some other words to nouns is also quite frequent: *mužský* (masculine – here: man), *ženská* (feminine – here: woman), *milý* (dear – here: darling), *vedúci* (leading – here: chief, leader), *cestujúci* (travelling – here: traveller, passenger), *pracujúci* (working – here: worker)...

## ADJECTIVES

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Adjectives are inflectional words that express attributive qualities of individuals or things: *dobrý chlap* (good fellow), *nový dom* (new house), *vysoký strom* (high tree), *veľká rýchlosť* (great speed), *krásne mesto* (beautiful town).

The qualities expressed by adjectives exist only as properties of nouns.

Adjectives express qualities that discriminate among two or more different objects, hence, they qualify a noun. Therefore, they have an attributive character and usually have a determinative function in the sentence.

According to their meaning adjectives are divided into qualitative and relational adjectives.

Qualitative adjectives indicate the qualities of individuals and things: *pekný dom* (nice house), *milý človek* (kind man), *dobrý chlieb* (good bread).

Relational adjectives indicate the origin of the given object or they can express to whom the given individual or thing belongs: *otcov hlas* (father's voice), *anglické mesto* (English town), *vlnené rukavice* (woollen gloves).

### FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives may be derived from nouns, from verbs as well as from adjectives by means of suffixes, prefixes, by combining words and also analytically.

The meaning of an adjective combines the meaning of the base and the suffix together. Thus, we distinguish qualitative and relational adjectives.

The meaning of adjectives can also be modified quantitatively by word-formation: it can be graded, i.e. the degree of the quality can be increased or decreased. Only the qualitative adjectives have degrees of comparison.

When new adjectives are formed by combination or analytically, their meaning derives from at least two words in a syntagmatic relation.

## Qualitative Adjectives

Qualitative adjectives, from the point of view of their origin, may, but need not be derived from nouns, verbs or adjectives. With respect to this, qualitative adjectives are divided into four groups.

1. The first group includes adjectives whose origin is not obvious and which can in some respect be considered as non-derived.

a) They are adjectives ending in *-ý, -á, -é* or *-í, -ia, -ie*: *zlatý* (golden), *mladý* (young), *slabý* (weak), *hlúpy* (silly), *zdravý* (healthy), *nový* (new), *starý* (old), *chorý* (sick), *múdry* (wise), *ostrý* (sharp), *dobrý* (good), *zlý* (bad), *rýchly* (quick), *malý* (small), *dlhý* (long), *suchý* (dry), *cudzí* (foreign) etc.

We also regard as non-derived the names of colours: *biely* (white), *bledý* (pale), *žltý* (yellow), *modrý* (blue), *čierny* (black), *červený* (red), *zelený* (green).

b) Adjectives ending in *-ký, -oký, -eký, -iký*: *úzky* (narrow), *nízky* (low), *blízky* (near), *veľký* (big), *krátky* (short), *mäkký* (soft), *široký* (broad), *vysoký* (tall), *hlboký* (deep), *divoký* (wild), *ďaleký* (distant), *veľký* (big).

2. The second group includes adjectives formed from abstract nouns in the strict sense of the word, from nouns implying action, or from verbs, by means of the suffixes *-ný* or *-ový*. They indicate that the quality of the object is due to the presence of the quality expressed in the base of the adjective. E.g. *chladný* (cool), *hladný* (hungry), *smädný* (thirsty), *obyčajný* (ordinary), *vinný* (guilty), *vkusný* (tasteful), *rodný* (native), *činný* (active), *verný* (faithful), *pokojný* (peaceful), *mocný* (powerful), *zodpovedný* (responsible), *krásny* (beautiful), *voľný* (free), *silný* (strong), *pyšný* (proud), *nehybný* (immobile), *chorobný* (morbid), *chváľitebný* (praiseworthy), *potrebný* (necessary), *radostný* (joyful), *bolestný* (painful), *užitočný* (useful), *dosta-točný* (sufficient), *skutočný* (real), *usilovný* (diligent), *bojovný* (warlike).

3. The third group includes verbal participles and qualitative adjectives formed from verbs. They express the quality of an individual or a thing in relation to a) an active performance of work, b) the state of the active object, c) the capability and disposition for activity expressed in the verb base.

a) The quality following from an active performance of work is expressed by the verbal participle:

aa) The present participle in the active voice expresses the quality of a continuous activity: *pracujúci* (working), *hovoriaci* (talking), *píšúci* (writing), *prekvapujúci* (surprising), etc.

bb) The past participle in the active voice indicates the quality of the active conclusion of the work: *zvíťazivší* (one who has won).

b) The quality of the state following from the fact that the subject acquired the activity expressed in the verb base:

aa) Adjectives derived from the past participle in the active voice express the quality gained by the subject by actively carrying on the continuous action expressed by the verb base: *smelý* (bold), *umelý* (artificial), *minulý* (past), *zrelý* (ripe), *trvalý* (permanent), *predošlý* (preceding), *ospalý* (sleepy), etc.

Several further adjectives ending in *-lý*, are also included here: *svetlý* (bright), *závislý* (dependent), etc.

bb) Participles with the ending *-tý* derived from perfective verbs have the meaning of an active acquisition of the quality (or state) by means of a non-continuous action: *zoschnutý* (withered), *vychladnutý* (cooled), *padnutý* (fallen), *dozretý* (ripe), *vystretý* (stretched out), *ustatý* (tired), *rozliaty* (spilt), *zmrznutý* (frozen) etc.

cc) Past participles ending in *-ný* and *-tý* derived from transitive verbs, indicate a quality acquired passively: *unavený* (tired), *uzdravený* (recovered), *zasiaty* (sown), *zaviaty* (snowed up), *počutý* (heard), but also *varený* (cooked), *pražený* (fried), *rodený* (born), *milovaný* (beloved), *maľovaný* (painted), etc.

c) The meaning of capability, disposition to perform the activity expressed in the verb base is usual with adjectives formed by the suffixes *-x-vý*, *-teľný*, *-x-ci*, *-utý*: *zvedavý* (curious), *tvorivý* (creative), *snaživý* (assiduous), *náhlivý* (hasty); *pijavý* (blotting), *boľavý* (painful); *chorľavý* (sick), *chytľavý* (contagious); *škodlivý* (harmful), *citlivý* (sensitive); *ústupčivý* (yielding); *trvanlivý* (durable), *uznanlivý* (appreciative), *mlčanlivý* (taciturn), *ospánlivý* (sleepy); *zrozumiteľný* (understandable), *viditeľný* (visible); *hrací* (playing), *šijací* (sewing), *písací* (writing), *kúpací* (bathing), *holiaci* (shaving), *čistiaci* (cleaning), *horúci* (hot), *tekutý* (liquid).

4. The fourth group of adjectives includes those derived from nouns and expressing abundance of a quality indicated in the base. These adjectives have the endings *-x-tý*, *-avý*: *bradatý* (bearded), *hlavaty* (obstinate), *bohatý* (rich), *kvetnatý* (flowery), *vodnatý* (watery), *jedovatý* (poisonous), *vinovatý* (guilty), *mäsitý* (fleshy), *železitý* (ferruginous), *vajcovitý* (egg-shaped), *kamenistý* (stony), *bahnistý* (muddy), *deravý* (full of holes), *hrdzavý* (rusty), *tmavý* (dark), *bolestivý* (painful), *dobrotivý* (kind).

The measure of the quality of an adjective is intensified or diminished when it is derived from qualitative noun. Intensification or diminution of the quality expresses merely a greater or smaller amount of the quality. The quantitative relations do not disrupt the basic qualitative meaning of adjectives.

a) The amount of quality is intensified by augmentative suffixes: *-ánsky*, *-izný*: *velikánsky* (colossal), *vysokánsky* (very high), *širočizný* (very broad), *vysočizný* (very high).

b) The amount of quality is diminished by the diminutive suffixes *-x-ký*, *-stý*, *-avý*: *maličký* (small), *staručký* (old), *peknučičký* (nice), *malinký* (small), *drobunký* – *drobušký* (tiny), *malilinký* (small), *červenkastý* (reddish), *žltkastý* (yellowish), *sladkastý* (sweetish), *belavý* (whitish).

The quality of adjectives is further exaggerated or reduced:

a) by the prefixes *pri-*, *pra-*: *pridobry* (too good), *prikrasny* (too nice), *prastary* (ancient),

b) with the help of adverbs of measures: *veľmi dobrý* (very good), *nadmieru zlý* (extremely bad), *neobyčajne milý* (unusually kind), *celkom hotový* (quite ready),

c) by repetition of the same adjectives in various forms: *celý celučičký* (whole), *samý samučičký* (alone), *každý každyčký* (each), *pekný peknučký* (nice).

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON

Degrees of comparison of adjectives yield forms that express an intensification or a reduction of the amount of a certain quality. This is achieved by derivation from qualitative adjectives.

Only qualitative adjectives have degrees of comparison. These may be either absolute, or relative degrees.

The absolute degree expresses the amount of the quality of one object irrespective of that of another object.

The relative degree expresses a greater amount of the quality of one object with regard to that of another object.

The positive degree expresses the quality of an object regardless of its amount.

The comparative expresses a greater amount of the quality in comparison with that of another individual or thing.

The superlative expresses the greatest amount of the quality when comparing the quality of one individual or thing to that of other individuals or things.

The positive has the form of a qualitative adjective.

The comparative is formed in two ways:

a) by the suffix *-ší*:

aa) if the stem of the adjective ends in a simple consonant: *mlší* (kinder), *mladší* (younger), *dlhší* (longer), *slabší* (weaker), *bohatší* (richer). If there is a long syllable in the stem, the suffix *-ejší* is used: *sýtejší* (more satiated) *skúpejší* (meaner);

bb) if the adjectives end in *-ký*, *-oký*, *-eký*, *-iký*: *užší* (narrower), *nižší* (lower), *sladší* (sweeter), *redší* (thinner), *kratší* (shorter), *mäkkší* (softer), *širší* (broader), *vyšší* (higher), *hlbší* (deeper);

b) by the suffix *-ejší*:

aa) if the stem of adjective ends in a cluster of consonants: *bystřejší* (cleverer), *rýchlejší* (quicker), *slávnejší* (more famous), *múdrejší* (wiser) etc. The long-stem syllable remains unchanged in these adjectives;

bb) in adjectives derived from participles: *známejší* (more familiar), *dospelejší* (more adult), *zúfalejší* (more desperate), etc.;

cc) in adjectives with the stem ending in a sibilant: *horúcejší* (hotter), *rýdzejší* (purer), *sviežejší* (fresher), etc.;

dd) in adjectives where the relationship is considered as a quality: *ľudskejší* (more humane), *priateľskejší* (more friendly), etc.

ee) in more-syllabic adjectives ending in *-atý*, *-itý*, *-istý*, *-ivý*, *-livý*, *-avý*, *-lavý*, *-ovatý*, *-astý*, e.g. *zložitejší* (more complicated), *citlivejší* (more sensitive), *jedovatejší* (more poisonous), etc.

The superlative is formed from the comparative and the prefix *naj-*: *najmilší* (the kindest), *najkrajší* (the nicest), *najmladší* (the youngest), *najmúdrejší* (the wisest), etc.

Relational adjectives such as *otcov* (father's), *matkin* (mother's), *otcovský* (paternal), the relational adjectives *ľesný* (pertaining to the forest), *denný* (daily), *bukový* (pertaining to beech-tree), *horský* (pertaining to the mountain), qualitative adjectives of the type *písací* (writing) do not have the degrees of comparison.

Irregular degrees of comparison are to be found in the adjectives *dobrý* (good) – *lepší* – *najlepší*, *zlý* (bad) – *horší* – *najhorší*, *velký* (big) – *větší* – *najvětší*, *malý* (little) – *menší* – *najmenší*, *krásný* (beautiful) – *krajší* – *najkrajší*.

If the quality of one thing is compared with that of another the conjunctions *ako*, *ani*, *sťa* are used.

The comparative is used when the same quality of at least two individuals or things is compared, the degree of the quality of the compared individual or thing being higher. Here the conjunction *ako*, *než* are used, or the prepositional cases.

If the quality in the comparative is compared with the qualities of all the other individuals, the comparative has the same meaning as if the superlative were used. *Bol bystrejší než ostatní.* (He was cleverer than the others.)

## Relational Adjectives

Relational adjectives indicate individuals or things to which the given individuals or things are related.

They are derived from nouns of concrete personal or material meaning.

Possessive adjectives indicate the owner or owners of an object. E.g. *bratov nôž* (brother's knife), *materinská láska* (mother's love).

a) Possessive adjectives are formed with the suffixes:

-*ov*: from personal masculine nouns: *otcov* (father's), *bratov* (brother's), *učiteľov* (teacher's), *susedov* (neighbour's);

-*in*: from personal feminine nouns: *matkin* (mother's), *sestrin* (sister's), *ženin* (woman's), *dcérin* (daughter's), *učiteľkin* (woman-teacher's).

b) They are usually formed by the endings *-í*, *-áci* from animal nouns and denote appurtenance to a species or a group. These are possessive adjectives in a broader sense of the term. E.g. *človečí* (human), *hadí* (pertaining to snakes), *vtáčí* (avian), *hovädzí* (pertaining to cattle), *rybí* (piscine), *včelí* (bee's), *psí* (dog's) *zvierací* (animal), *mačací* (cat's), *teľací* (calf's).

c) The relation denoting a belonging to a group of individuals, animals and things, is expressed by the means of the endings *-ský*, *-cký*.

This relation of belonging in a narrow sense of the word is expressed by adjectives derived from possessive adjectives (ending in *-ov*, *-in*) by means of the suffix *-ský*, e.g. *otcovský* (paternal), *synovský* (filial), *kráľovský* (royal), *materinský* (maternal).

In a broader sense of the word this relation is expressed by adjectives formed by means of the suffixes *-ský*, *-cký* from:

- masculine animate personal nouns: *mužský*, *chlapský*, *učiteľský*;
- masculine animal nouns: *konský*;
- masculine inanimate nouns: *trenčiansky*;
- feminine nouns: *ženský*, *sesterský*, *horský*, *banský*;
- neuter nouns: *mestský*, *morský*, *detský*.

The suffix *-cký* is used in the following adjectives: *košícký*, *bystrický*, *gramatický*, *grécky*, *fabrický*, *americký*, *africký*, etc. In these adjectives the relational meaning is considered to be qualitative.



Relational adjectives may express origin from matter or space.

a) Origin from matter is expressed by adjectives derived from names of materials with the aid of the suffixes :

-ový: *dubový, medový, chlebový, stromový, orechový, slivkový, papierový, makový, kovový*;

-ný: *mliečny, kostný, soľný, železný, vodný, uhoľný, piesočný*;

-ený: *medený, kostený, vlnený, drevený, olovený, sklenený*.

b) Origin from spaces is implied :

aa) in adjectives derived from nouns and adverbs indicating locality with the suffix -ný: *lesný, záhradný, potočný, riečny, miestny, stredný, dolný, zadný, predný*, etc. ;

bb) in adjectives derived from nouns indicating the time period, with the suffixes :

-ný: *nočný, jarný, denný, ročný, mesačný*;

-ajší: *nedelňajší, poludňajší, vlašajší, večerňajší, včerajší, zajtrajší, terajší*.

## Formation of Adjectives by Combination

Apart from derivation, adjectives are formed by means of suffixes and prefixes and also by combining independent words as follows :

a) From two adjectives in the coordinative relation : *bledomodrý, ľudovodemokratický, hospodárskopolitický, staroslovenský, celodenný*. In this case two properties with two qualities are combined and hence a new property with a new quality is derived.

If we combine two or more properties each of which keeps its original quality, then they are written with a hyphen: *bielo-modro-červená zástava, anglicko-slovenský slovník*.

b) From two independent word roots in a connective relation: *telovýchovný, slovotvorný, ohňovzdorný*; in attributive and adverbial relations: *rovnobežný, dobrovoľný*.

c) Here are also included adjectives formed from nouns with the suffixes -ý, -á, -é from an original prepositional construction as for example : *bezzubý, bezhlavý*.

Compound adjectives belong to the corresponding groups of qualitative adjectives according to their meaning.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives change their endings in declension according to the grammatical categories of the noun. The adjective thus has endings according to the gender, number and case. We distinguish two types of declension :

1. declension of qualitative adjectives (the paradigms “pekný” – nice, “cudzí” – strange, “páví” – peacock’s);

2. declension of relational adjectives formed by the endings -ov, -ova, -ovo and -in, -ina, -ino (the paradigm “otcov” – father’s).

## The Paradigm “pekný”

	Masc. Anim.	Masc. Inanim.	Neuter	Feminine
Sg. N.	pekn-ý	pekn-ý	pekn-é	pekn-á
G.	pekn-ého	pekn-ého	pekn-ého	pekn-ej
D.	pekn-ému	pekn-ému	pekn-ému	pekn-ej
A.	pekn-ého	pekn-ý	pekn-é	pekn-ú
L.	pekn-om	pekn-om	pekn-om	pekn-ej
I.	pekn-ým	pekn-ým	pekn-ým	pekn-ou
	Masc. Anim.	Other Genders		
Pl. N.	pekn-í	pekn-é		
G.	pekn-ých	pekn-ých		
D.	pekn-ým	pekn-ým		
A.	pekn-ých	pekn-é		
L.	pekn-ých	pekn-ých		
I.	pekn-ými	pekn-ými		

According to the paradigm “pekný” we decline adjectives with a hard ending. They are adjectives whose stem ends in a hard or neutral consonant and whose nominative singular endings are -ý, -á, -é, e.g. *pekný* (nice), *široký* (broad), *dobry* (good), *malý* (small), *slabý* (weak), *drevený* (wooden), *zlatý* (golden), *efektívny*...

According to this paradigm we also decline some words with the character of “hard” adjectives, for example, some pronouns (*aký, akýsi, taký, nejaký, ktorý, samý, koľký, toľký*...), numerals (*prvý* – first, *druhý* – second, *piaty* – fifth, *dvojnásobný* – twofold...), past participles (*písaný* – written, *zatvorený* – closed, *skrytý* – hidden...) and also nouns that have originated by substantivization of adjectives (*vrchný* – headwaiter, *desiata* – mid-morning snack, *členské* – membership fee, *Tajovský*...).

## The Paradigm “cudzí”

	Masc. Anim.	Masc. Inanim.	Neuter	Feminine
Sg. N.	cudz-í	cudz-í	cudz-ie	cudz-ia
G.	cudz-ieho	cudz-ieho	cudz-ieho	cudz-ej
D.	cudz-iemu	cudz-iemu	cudz-iemu	cudz-ej
A.	cudz-ieho	cudz-í	cudz-ie	cudz-iu
L.	cudz-om	cudz-om	cudz-om	cudz-ej
I.	cudz-ím	cudz-ím	cudz-ím	cudz-ou
	Masc. Anim.	Other Genders		
Pl. N.	cudz-í	cudz-ie		
G.	cudz-ích	cudz-ích		

D. cudz-ím	cudz-ím
A. cudz-ích	cudz-ie
L. cudz-ích	cudz-ích
I. cudz-ími	cudz-ími

According to the paradigm “cudzí” we decline qualitative adjectives with a soft ending. These are adjectives whose stem ends in a soft consonant and whose nominative endings are *-í, -ia, -ie*, e.g. *svieži* (fresh), *horúci* (hot)... The declension of the comparative and superlative is also included here.

According to this paradigm we also decline some other words having the character of adjectives. They are: some pronouns (*čí, čia, čie, niečí, voľací, ničí...*), numerals (*tretí* – third, *tisíci* – thousandth), present active participles and past active participles (*píšúci* – writing, *stojaci* – standing, *prečítavší* – read, *vrátivší sa* – returned...) and also nouns that have originated by substantivization of the “soft” adjectives (*domáca* – housewife, *cestujúci* – passenger...).

### The Paradigm “pávi”

In this paradigm the system of endings is the same as in the paradigm “cudzí”, but here the rhythmical rule does not apply.

According to the paradigm “pávi” we decline adjectives formed from animal nouns with the endings *-í, -ia, -ie* preceded by soft or neutral consonant, e.g. *jelení* (deer’s), *včelí* (bee’s), *zajačí* (hare’s), *kozí* (goat’s), *človečí* (human)...

### The Paradigm “otcov”

	Masc. Anim.	Masc. Inanim.	Neuter	Feminine
Sg. N.	otcov-Ø	otcov-Ø	otcov-o	otcov-a
G.	otcov-ho	otcov-ho	otcov-ho	otcov-ej
D.	otcov-mu	otcov-mu	otcov-mu	otcov-ej
A.	otcov-ho	otcov-Ø	otcov-o	otcov-u
L.	otcov-om	otcov-om	otcov-om	otcov-ej
I.	otcov-ým	otcov-ým	otcov-ým	otcov-ou

	Masc. Anim.	Other Genders
Pl. N.	otcov-i	otcov-e
G.	otcov-ých	otcov-ých
D.	otcov-ým	otcov-ým
A.	otcov-ých	otcov-e
L.	otcov-ých	otcov-ých
I.	otcov-ými	otcov-ými

According to the paradigm “otcov” we decline adjectives formed from masculine nouns with the endings *-ov, -ova, -ovo* or from feminine nouns with the endings *-in, -ina, -ino*. They are particularly adjectives derived from personal nouns. Examples: *bratov* (brother’s), *učiteľov* (teacher’s), *žiakov* (pupil’s), *susedov* (male neighbour’s), *Petrov* (Peter’s), *sestrin* (sister’s), *susedkin* (female neighbour’s)...

Masculine surnames ending in *-ov, -in* are declined according to the paradigm “chlap” (*Ondrejov, Lermontov, Lenin...*).

## SPECIAL FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives have petrified forms from an Old Slovak declension pattern, according to which they used to have the endings of nouns in all the cases. Only a few forms of this declension have been preserved. They are: *rád – rada – rado – radi – rady* (fond of, to like), *hoden* (worth), *vinen* (guilty), *dlžen* (in debt). These forms are also to be found in the pronouns *on* (he), *ona* (she), *ono* (it), *oni – ony* (they), *sám – sama – samo – sami – samy* (alone), *žiadnen – žiadna – žiadno* (none), *všetok – všetka – všetko – všetci – všetky* (all) and the numeral *jeden – jedna – jedno – jedni – jedny* (one).

Ordinal numerals in connection with the adverb *pol* have also the form of the genitive: *pol druha* (one and a half), *pol treťa* (two and a half), *pol štvrta, pol piata, pol desiata*..

## PRONOUNS

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Pronouns are words that stand for individuals, things, qualities as well as general concepts.

Pronouns have no concrete meaning, they only express general categories. For example the pronoun *ja* (I) indicates the category of the speaker, the pronouns *ty, vy* (you) refers to the addressee; the pronouns *on, ona, ono, oni, ony* (he, she, it, they) indicate persons who do not take part in the dialogue. The pronoun *kto* (who) expresses a person and the pronoun *čo* (what) expresses a thing without any concrete contents. If we say *tento* (this) we indicate a person or object whose name is masculine in Slovak.

Pronouns are then the names of the most common grammatical concepts. The number of pronouns is limited. We only use as many pronouns as there are grammatical categories. Words indicating place, time, measure, as well as common concepts, however, are also called pronouns: *kde* (where), *tu* (here), *sem* (hither), *kedy* (when), *vtedy* (then), *koľko* (how many, much), *preto* (therefore), etc. These pronouns are usually included among adverbs in grammar books and are called pronominal adverbs.

According to their meaning pronouns are divided as follows :

### Personal pronouns :

- a) basic: *ja, my* (1st person), *ty, vy* (2nd person), *on, ona, ono, oni, ony* (3rd person);  
b) possessive: *môj* (my), *náš* (our), *tvoj, váš* (your), *jeho* (his, its), *jej* (her), *ich* (their).

### Reflexive pronouns :

basic: *seba/sa*,  
possessive: *svoj*.

### Demonstrative pronouns :

*ten, onen* (that), *taký, onaký* (such), *tolký, toľkoraký, toľko, tak* (so), *tam* (there), *vtedy* (then)...

### Interrogative pronouns :

*kto* (who), *čo* (what), *ktorý* (which), *čí* (whose), *kde* (where), *kedy* (when), *ako* (how)...

Interrogative pronouns can also be used as relative pronouns. Therefore, relative pronouns do not form a separate group.

### Indefinite pronouns :

*niekto* (somebody), *niečo* (something), *nejaký* (some), *dakto* (somebody), *dačo* (something), *dajaký* (some) and some more pronouns derived from interrogative pronouns and particles with the following affixes: *veľa-*, *všeli-*, *hoci-*, *hoc-*, *leda-*, *leci-*, *kde-*, *sotva-*, *ktovie-*, *-si*, *-koľvek*; *ten-ktorý*, *aký-taký*, *čo-to*, *ktovieaký*, *bohvieaký*, etc.

According to their grammatical meaning pronouns are divided as follows :

nominal: *ja, ty, kto, čo*...

adjectival: *môj, náš, taký, aký*...

numeral: *koľko, toľkí, toľkokrát*...

adverbial: *kde, kedy, tu, tam, vtedy, ako, tak*...

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns indicate persons. The first person pronoun indicates the speaking individual: *ja, my*; the pronoun of the second person indicates the addressee: *ty, vy*; the pronoun of the third person indicates an individual not taking part in a dialogue: *on, ona, ono, oni, ony*.

The reflexive pronoun *sa* does not indicate any concrete grammatical person, it only expresses the relations between subject, action and object. Most often it stands in the function of a formal object. It expresses that the grammatical subject is also the object of the action.

### Declension of Personal Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd Persons

	1st. Person	2nd Person	Reflexive Pronoun
Sg. N.	ja	ty	—
G.	mňa, ma	teba, ťa	seba, sa
D.	mne, mi	tebe, ti	sebe, si
A.	mňa, ma	teba, ťa	seba, sa
L. (o)	mne	(o) tebe	(o) sebe
I.	mnou	tebou	sebou
Pl. N.	my	vy	
G.	nás	vás	
D.	nám	vám	
A.	nás	vás	
L. (o)	nás	(o) vás	
I.	nami	vami	

With the finite verb forms, the nominative of personal pronouns is usually omitted, because the personal ending of a verb overtly expresses the grammatical person: *vidím* (I see), *videli ste* (you saw), *píš* (write!), *volajte* (call!) etc.

If, however, it is necessary to emphasize the grammatical person, the personal pronoun is used and is emphasized.

Personal pronouns in the genitive, dative, and accusative singular have the short forms *ma, ťa, sa, mi, ti, si* as well as the long forms *mňa, teba, seba, mne, tebe, sebe*.

The long forms are used:

a) When emphasized and always at the beginning of a sentence. *Mňa ste volali?* (Was it I that you called?) *Tebe sa to podarilo.* (You yourself managed it.) *Myslíš len na seba.* (You only think of yourself.)

a) After prepositions: *Príď ku mne.* (Come to me.)

The short forms are used as enclitics, they are not emphasized. The short forms are used neither at the beginning of a sentence nor after prepositions: *Povedal mi všetko.* (He told me all.) *Nepoznám ťa.* (I don't know you.)

### Declension of Personal Pronouns of the 3rd Person

The pronoun of the 3rd person differs from the other pronouns by the fact that it has three genders.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sg. N.	on	ona	ono
G.	jeho, ho, neho, -ňho, -ň	jej, nej	as in masc.
D.	jemu, mu, nemu	jej, nej	as in masc.
A.	jeho, ho, neho, -ňho, -ň	ju, ňu	ho, -ň
L. (o)	ňom	(o) nej	as in masc.
I.	ním	ňou	as in masc.
Pl. N.	oni	ony	ony
G.		ich, nich	
D.		im, nim	
A.	ich, nich ich, ne	ich, ne	ich, ne
L.		(o) nich	
I.		nimi	

The long forms of the singular *jeho*, *jemu* are used when emphasized and at the beginning of a sentence: *Jemu som to nepovedal.* (I didn't say it to him.)

The short forms *ho*, *mu* and *ich*, *im* are enclitics and without emphasis: *Videl som ho.* (I saw him.)

The forms with *ň* at the beginning are used only after prepositions: *Dostal som od neho list.* (I got a letter from him.) *Ideme k nej.* (We are going to her.)

After prepositions ending in vowels, the forms *-ňho*, *-ňmu*, *-ň* can be used: *Zavolaj naňho/naň!* (Call out to him!)

The genitive singular and plural *jeho*, *jej*, *ich* has the meaning of the possessive pronoun of the third person, as well: *jeho dom* (his house), *jeho pero* (her pen), *ich práca* (their work).

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Possessive pronouns indicate that a grammatical person is the owner of an individual or a thing. According to this, the 1st grammatical person has its possessive pronoun *môj* (my), *náš* (our), the 2nd person *tvoj*, *váš* (your), the 3rd person's possessive pronoun does not show gender or case concordance (*jeho*, *jej*) with the following noun. The gender of the possessive pronoun is determined by the gender of the possessor, not by the object possessed. The reflexive possessive pronoun *svoj* corresponds to the personal reflexive pronoun *sa* in the sense that it refers to the grammatical subject of the sentence.

Possessive pronouns have usually the character of adjectives and they usually have the function of the congruent attribute.

Indefinite possessive pronouns are formed from the interrogative pronoun *čí*,

čia, čie with the affixes *da-*, *nie-*, *voľa-...*: *niečí, niečia, niečie, čisi, čiasi, čiesi, číkolvek, dačí, ničí, ničia, ničie, voľačí*, etc.

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sg. N.	môj	moja	moje
G.	môjho	mojej	as in masc.
D.	môjmu	mojej	as in masc.
A.	môjho môj ( <i>inanimate</i> )	moju	moje
L. (o)	mojom	(o) mojej	as in masc.
I.	mojím	mojou	as in masc.
Pl. N.	moji moje ( <i>inanimate</i> )	moje	moje
G.		mojich	
D.		mojim	
A.	mojich moje ( <i>inanimate</i> )	moje	moje
L.		(o) mojich	
I.		mojimi	

As can be seen the long stem syllable alternates with the short syllable: *môj, môjho, môjmu* on the one hand with *mojom, mojimi, moji, moje* on the other hand; similarly *náš, nášho, nášmu* on the one hand with *naša, naše, naši, našimi* on the other hand.

The declension of the possessive pronouns *tvoj, svoj, náš, váš* follows the same pattern.

Possessive pronouns are used in the function of congruent attributes in sentence.

The reflexive pronoun *svoj* (own) is used, regardless of the person, in sentences where the object is possessed by the subject: *Robte si svoju prácu* (Do your work!), *Doniesol si svoj zošit* (He brought his copy-book), *Mám svoje pero* (I have my pen).

Possessive pronouns can also be used as if they were nouns: *Pôjdem s našimi na výlet*. (I'll go for a trip with my family.) *Moja je doma*. (My wife is at home.) *Sú naši v záhrade?* (Are our folks in the garden?)

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

Demonstrative pronouns serve to point to an individual, a thing or quality indicating whether they are near, far, the same, different, etc. They can be divided into:

a) determining: *ten – tá – to* (that), *istý – istá – isté* (certain), *sám – sama – samo* (-self), *každý – každá – každé* (each), *všetok – všetka – všetko* (all), *iný – iná – iné* (another).



b) qualitative: *taký – taká – také* (such), *inší – inšia – inšie* (another), *inakší – inakšia – inakšie* (different).

The meaning of demonstrative pronouns is emphasized by means of the particles: *tento – táto – toto* (this), *tamten – tamtá – tamto* (that), *tenže – táže – tože* (the same) and by means of the phrases *ten istý – tá istá – to isté* (the same), *ten samý – tá samá – to samé* (the same).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sg. N.	ten	tá	to
G.	toho	tej	toho
D.	tomu	tej	tomu
A.	toho	tú	to
	ten ( <i>inanimate</i> )		
L. (o)	tom	(o) tej	(o) tom
I.	tým	tou	tým
Pl. N.	tí	tie	tie
	tie ( <i>inanimate</i> )		
G.		tých	
D.		tým	
A.	tých	tie	tie
	tie ( <i>inanimate</i> )		
L.		(o) tých	
I.		tými	

The emphasized and compound forms are declined as follows: *tento, tohto, tomuto, títo*, etc.; *tamten, tamtoho, tamtí, tamtie*, etc; *henten, hentoho, o hentej s hentou*, etc.

Both elements of the pronouns *ten istý, ten samý* are declined separately, e.g. *toho istého, tomu istému*...

The consonant *t* in the demonstrative pronouns is always hard, i.e. it is not palatal even before *e*: *ten* [ten] cf. *tenký* [tenkí].

The pronoun *onen, oná, ono* is an emphasized form of the personal pronouns *on, ona, ono*. It is declined as follows: *oného, onému, o onom*, etc.; *onej, onú, onou*, etc.; *oní, oné, oných, oným, onými*.

In phraseological expressions, usually in biblical and similar texts, the archaic forms in the genitive and dative singular are used – *onoho, onomu*: *za onoho času* (in those days); *akoby prichádzalo z onoho sveta* (... as if it came from other world).

The pronoun *sám – sama – samo – sami – samy* is also included among demonstrative pronouns. It has the same forms as the adjectives declined on the paradigm “pekný”. Only the nominative singular and plural and the accusative singular of the feminine *sama* are different.

The pronoun *sám* can also have the forms of adjectives: *samý, samá, samé, samí, samé*.

The forms *sám, sama, samo, sami, samy, samu* are used:  
in connection with the reflexive pronoun (*Presviedčal sám seba.* – He was persuading himself.),

if they have emphatic function (*On sám všetko povedal.* – He himself said everything.).

The forms *samý, samá, samé* have the meaning of adjectives. They indicate an extreme degree of a certain quality: *Čo videl? Samú biedu.* (What did he see? Nothing but misery.) *Na ceste bola samá voda.* (There was nothing but water on the road.)

The pronouns *každý, každá, každé, žiaden, žiadna, žiadne, všetok, všetka, všetko, taký, iný, inakší* are also considered to be demonstrative pronouns. They express participation of all individuals or things present in the action. The pronoun *všetok* helps to express the number of individuals.

The pronouns *každý* and *žiaden* express the positive (*každý*) or negative (*žiaden*) participation of the individuals in the action. The pronoun *taký* indicates the quality of the object in question; the pronouns *iný, inší, inakší* indicate that the object in question is of a different quality. *Každý prišiel.* (Each one has come.) *Žiaden nechýbal.* (None was absent.) *Všetci boli veselí.* (All were merry.) *Bolo to také dobré?* (Was that so good?) *Náš kraj je inakší.* (Our country is different.)

## INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

By means of the interrogative pronouns we ask about an individual, a thing, an owner, quality, etc. The pronoun *kto* (who) asks about a person; the pronoun *čo* (what) asks about a thing, the pronoun *čí, čia, čie* (whose) asks about an owner, the pronoun *ktorý* (which) asks about an individual or thing out of a larger amount and *aký* (what) asks about the quality of an individual or a thing.

Indefinite pronouns are formed from interrogative pronouns. Indefinite pronouns do not have the meaning of interrogative pronouns, they have the meaning of demonstrative or possessive pronouns: *nikto, ktosi, čísi, niečí, akýsi*, etc.

Interrogative pronouns with the negative prefix *ni-* indicate that the individual, the thing, the quality, the owner in question do not exist: *nikto, nič, nijaký, ničí*. The pronoun *nič* (nothing) is the opposite to the pronoun *všetko* (everything).

## Declension of Interrogative Pronouns

N.	kto	čo
G.	koho	čoho
D.	komu	čomu
A.	koho	čo
L. (o)	kom	(o) čom
I. (s)	kým	(s) čím

The above interrogative pronouns indicate the grammatical category of case – the pronoun *kto* always refers to the masculine gender, the pronoun *čo* is always neuter.

All the indefinite pronouns derived from *kto*, *čo* are declined: *ktože*, *kohože*, *čože*, *čohože*, *ktosi*, *kohosi*...

Other interrogative pronouns as *ktorý*, *čí*, *aký*, etc. are declined on the adjectival paradigms.

The rhythmical rule does not apply to the instrumental *niečím*, *niekým*, *bárským*, *bársčím*.

Interrogative pronouns at the beginning of subordinate clauses have the function of subordinating conjunctions. In this case they are called relative pronouns. E.g. *Donesiem všetko, čo mám.* (I'll bring all that I have.) *Kniha, ktorú držíš, je nová.* (The book which you're holding, is new.) *Neviem, koľko ich príde.* (I don't know how many will come.)

## NUMERALS

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Numerals are words with a numerical meaning. They indicate the number of individuals or things, the number of their kinds, their order.

Numerals can be inflectional or non-inflectional.

Cardinal numerals are an independent part of speech in Slovak. They differ from adjectives and pronouns by their basic meaning as well as by their different declension. Some numerals are declined as nouns (*milión*, *štvrt* – quarter, *osmina* – eighth), some are declined as adjectives (*prvý* – first, *druhý* – second), some as pronouns (*jeden* – one), some have the non-inflectional adverbial forms (*päťoro* – five, *trikrát* – three times, *dvojnásobne* – twofold) and some are in the form of a prepositional case (*po jednom* – by one, *po dva*, *po tri*).

Numerals can be definite or indefinite.

The definite numerals are divided into:

- a) cardinal numerals: *jeden* (1), *dva* (2), *tri* (3), *štyri* (4), *päť* (5), *jedenásť* (11), *dvanásť* (12), *dvadsať* (20), *dvadsaťjeden* (21), *päťdesiat* (50), *deväťdesiat* (90), *sto* (100), *stodvadsaťdva* (122), *tisíc* (1000), *milión*, *miliarda*;
- b) group-numerals: *dvoje* (2), *troje* (3), *päťoro* (5), *desatoro* (10);
- c) generic numerals: *jednaký*, *dvojaký*, *trojaký*, *jednako*, *dvojako*, *desatorako*;
- d) multiplicative numerals: *dvojnásobný*, *trojnásobný*, *päťnásobný*; *raz*, *dva razy*, *jedenkrát*, *dvakrát*, *dvojmo*, *trojmo*;
- e) ordinal numerals: *prvý* (first), *druhý* (second), *tretí* (third), *dvadsiaty* (twentieth), *miliónty*.

Indefinite numerals do not indicate the exact number but only an indefinite quantity: *málo* (little), *menej* (less), *mnoho* (many, much), *viac* (more), *najviac* (the most), *veľa* (many, much), etc. Like the definite numerals, they are also divided into cardinal, generic, multiplicative and ordinal numerals.

## CARDINAL NUMERALS

Cardinal numerals express the number of individuals or things, that exist independently and separately. They answer the question *koľko?* (how many, how much?).

In counting and in mathematical operations the masculine inanimate forms are used: *jeden, dva, tri, štyri, päť, desať, jedenásť, dvanásť, dvadsať, dvadsaťjeden* or *jedenadvadsať, štyridsať, päťdesiat, sto, sto jeden, sto dvadsať, päťsto, tisíc*, etc.

Here are also included the indefinite numerals: *mnoho, málo, menej, veľa, viac, najviac, hodne* and fractional numerals: *pol* (half), *polovica* (half), *štvrt'* (quarter), *štvrtina* (quarter), *stotina* (hundredth), *tisícina* (thousandth).

All the kinds of numerals are formed from the cardinal numerals.

### Declension of the Numeral “jeden”

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Sg. N.	jeden	jedna	jedno
G.	jedného	jednej	jedného
D.	jednému	jednej	jednému
A.	jedného jeden ( <i>inanimate</i> )	jednu	jedno
L. (o)	jednom	(o) jednej	(o) jednom
I.	jedným	jednou	jedným
Pl. N.	jedni jedny ( <i>inanimate</i> )	jedny	jedny
G.		jedných	
D.		jedným	
A.	jedných jedny ( <i>inanimate</i> )	jedny	jedny
L.		(o) jedných	
I.		jednými	

The consonant *-n-* is always hard, never soft.

In this way we also decline the following pronouns: *sám, sama, samo, sami, samy* and *všetok, všetka, všetko, všetci, všetky*.

The numeral *jeden* has also various pronominal meanings.

Generally the numeral *jeden* is not used with nouns in the singular, e.g. *Vlak mešká* (The train is late).

But it is used:

a) if the numeral *jeden* is to be emphasized: *Mám len jeden klobúk* (I have only one hat);

b) if we refer to a thing usually found in a pair: *V jednej ruke mal pero* (He has pen in one hand);

c) if one of the whole is singled out: *Bol jedným z posledných* (He was one of the last);

d) when expressing reciprocity: *Pomáhali jeden druhému* (They helped each other);

e) when an indefinite person or thing is referred to: *Pri jednom dome brechal pes* (A dog was barking near a house);

f) when expressing identity: *Sedeli sme v jednom kupé* (We were sitting in the same compartment).

The meaning of the numeral *jeden* is emphasized when connected with the adjective *jediný* (the only). *Neprišiel ani jeden jediný člen.* (Not a single member has come.)

The plural form of the numeral *jeden* has the meaning of the cardinal numeral only with the pluralia tantum: *Obaja máme jednu husle* (We both have one violin).

### Declension of the Numeral “dva, obidvaja”

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	dvaja dva ( <i>inanimate</i> )		dve
G.		dvoch	
D.		dvom	
A.	dvoch dva ( <i>inanimate</i> )		dve
L.		(o) dvoch	
I.		dvoma	

The numerals *obidvaja*, *obidva*, *obaja*, *oba*, *obidve*, *obe* are declined similarly.

The numerals *obaja*, *oba*, *obe* and *obidvaja*, *obidva*, *obidve* indicate the number of two individuals as being one homogeneous indivisible whole: *Obaja sme ho čakali* (We both were waiting for him).

### Declension of the Numerals “tri, štyri”

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	traja tri ( <i>inanimate</i> )		tri
G.		troch	
D.		trom	
A.	troch tri ( <i>inanimate</i> )		tri
L.		(o) troch	
I.		troma/-mi	

N.	štyria štyri ( <i>inanimate</i> )		štyri
G.		štyroch	
D.		štyrom	
A.	štyroch štyri ( <i>inanimate</i> )		štyri
L.		(o) štyroch	
I.		štyirmi	

The number of pluralia tantum is expressed by the numerals: *troje nohavíc* (three pairs of trousers), *štvoro topánok* (four pairs of shoes).

### Declension of the Numerals “päť – deväťdesiat”

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N.	piati päť ( <i>inanimate</i> )		päť
G.		piatich	
D.		piatim	
A.	piatich päť ( <i>inanimate</i> )		päť
L.		(o) piatich	
I.		piatimi	

Thus the numerals from 5 to 99 are declined.

The syllable *-ti-* here is pronounced [ti]. The phrase *pred desiatimi rokmi* can also be given as *pred desať rokmi* (ten years ago).

When the numerals 22 – 29, 32 – 39... have the inflectional forms, they are not written together because both words, the one indicating the tens as well as the word indicating the units are declined: *dvadsať trija, od dvadsiatich dvoch*... When the ones precede the tens, then only the tens have the congruent forms and the units have the adverbial forms: *jedenadvadsať, dvaadvadsať, etc.*

It is not possible to express agreement in gender in the numerals 21, 31, 41... neither in the numerals 22 – 30, 32 – 40... except in the nominative and accusative of the masculine animate gender.

Here only the forms *dvadsaťjeden, tridsaťjeden, štyridsaťjeden*... and *dvadsaťdva, tridsaťdva*... are to be found as non-inflectional adverbial expressions not able to express grammatical concord, e.g. *s tridsaťjeden chlapmi, k dvadsaťjeden ženám*.

The non-inflectional numerals from 21 to 99 are always written as one word: *dvadsaťosem, štyridsaťjeden*. They are also written together when the units precede the tens: *jedenadvadsať, štyriapäťdesiat*. The forms with the tens preceding the units are the more frequent.

## The Numerals “sto, tisíc, milión”

The numeral *sto* is used in two ways :

a) If used in the function of a cardinal numeral, it is not declined and has the same properties as the other cardinal numerals from 5 to 99. The hundreds are counted as follows: *sto, dvesto, tristo, štyristo, päťsto, deväťsto*, etc. These forms are not declined.

b) Sometimes the indefinite number of hundreds is expressed by the nominative plural *stá* which is non-inflectional: *Dostali sme na stá listov* (We got hundreds of letters). Instead of *stá* the phrases with *stovky, celé stovky* can be used particularly when a case different from the nominative is required: *Dostali sme stovky (celé stovky) listov* (We got hundreds of letters).

The numeral *tisíc* is used as a numeral as well as a noun.

If *tisíc* is considered as a numeral, it can have the non-inflectional form *tisíc* or it can be declined as the numeral *päť*.

The thousands are counted: *jeden tisíc, dvatisíc, tritisíc, štyritisíc, desaťtisíc, jedenásťtisíc, dvadsaťtisíc, stotisíc*, etc. Here the numeral *tisíc* is invariable.

Instead of the nominative plural we can use the numerical noun *tisický, celé tisický*, etc. in the same way as the numeral *sto*.

The numeral *tisíc* is declined on the paradigm “stoj” but then it is a noun, e.g. *Nehovor o tvójich tisícoch* (Don't talk about your thousands).

The numerals *milión* and *miliarda* are declined as nouns in all cases of the singular and plural. We count them as nouns: *jeden milión, dva milióny, desať miliónov, dve miliardy, päť miliárd*.

## The Counted Object with the Cardinal Numerals

The numerals 1 – 4 have different forms for all the genders like adjectives. Thus, they agree in gender with the counted objects. E.g. *Traja chlapi ho držali*. (He was kept by three men.) *Pred dvoma hodinami sme skončili*. (We finished two hours ago.)

Similarly we can express the relation between the numerals 5 – 99 and *sto* and *tisíc*, on the one hand, and the object, on the other, by means of the forms *piati, piatich, piatimi*, etc. E.g. *Odišiel s piatimi priateľmi* (He left with five friends.)

With the numerals 5 and higher, the counted object is always in the genitive plural. Material nouns used with the cardinal numerals are in the genitive plural. E.g. *šesť kníh* (six books), *dvadsať dní* (twenty days), *deväťdesiat domov* (ninety houses), *tristo strán* (three hundred pages), etc. These constructions can be used even with masculine animate nouns without any limitation: *päť chlapcov* (five boys), *vojakov, robotníkov*, etc. and also with the indefinite numerals: *mnoho ľudí* (many people), *mnoho snehu* (much snow), *vody, dažďa*...

If the construction of the numeral with the counted object in the genitive is used in the function of the subject, then the predicate is in the 3rd person singular, i.e. it has

the impersonal construction. E.g. *Tu zostalo desať kusov.* (Ten pieces remained here.) *Prešlo päť minút.* (Five minutes have passed.) *Mnoho zvierat zahynulo.* (Many animals have perished.)

If the construction of the numeral with the counted object in the genitive is used in the function of the object or the adverbial modifier, then the predicate is congruent with the subject. E.g. *Päť stovák už vrátil.* (He has already given back five hundred – understand Kčs.)

If the construction of the numeral with the counted object is prepositional, then the counted object is in the case required by the preposition, and the numeral has the non-inflectional form. E.g. *Zo sto žiakov si učiteľ vybral päťdesiat.* (From among a hundred pupils the teacher chose fifty.) *Po desať rokoch* – but also *Po desiatich rokoch* – *začal znova.* (After ten years he began again.)

The counted object is in the genitive only after a preposition with the accusative. E.g. *Doniesol za tri koruny cukríkov.* (He brought three crowns' worth of sweets.)

If the counted object is in the genitive in the construction with *stá, tisíce* the predicate is usually in the impersonal form (i.e. 3rd person singular, neuter): *Tisíce ľudí súhlasilo s návrhom.* (Thousands of people agreed with the project.)

If these constructions stand without the counted object, as nouns, they have the usual personal construction like nouns. E.g. *Celé tisíce prišli na výstavu.* (Thousands have come to the exhibition.) Instead of the forms *stá, tisíce*, the nouns *stovky, tisícky* are used more frequently.

## GROUP-NUMERALS

Group-numerals indicate the number of separate individuals or things that form one whole.

These numerals are derived from cardinal numerals with the aid of the suffixes *-oje, -oro*: *dvoje, obidvoje, troje, štvoro, päťoro, desaťoro, dvadsaťoro*, etc.

The numerals *21, 22 – 29, 31, 32 – 39...* do not occur in the forms of group-numerals.

In connection with the pluralia tantum they have the meaning of cardinal numerals: *dvoje rukavíc* (two pairs of gloves), *dvoje dvier* (two doors), *troje husíeľ* (three violins), etc.

These numerals are non-inflectional. They show petrified nominal forms and express what we could otherwise indicate by the nouns *jednotka, dvojka, trojka, päťorka, osmorka*, or *dvojica* (pair), *trojica* (trinity), *štvorica*, etc.

The counted object with the group-numerals is in the genitive plural. E.g. *Z jeho troje detí iba jedno je zdravé.* (Only one of his three children is healthy.)

It is essential to distinguish between group-numerals and generic numerals. Numerals accompanying the pluralia tantum define the number of individuals as nouns do, and they have the function of an adverbial modifier of measure in a sentence. Generic numerals are adjectives or adverbs and they have the function of the congruent attribute or the adverbial modifier of manner in a sentence.



The counted subject with the group-numerals (except the numeral *jedno*) is always in the genitive plural. If this construction is the subject, then the predicate has the form of the 3rd person singular in neuter. E.g. *Jeho štvoro detí ho už dávno čaká* (His four children have long been waiting for him).

## GENERIC NUMERALS

Generic numerals indicate the number of species to which the individuals or things belong with regard to their properties.

They are formed from the group-numerals and the pronouns *-aký, -aká, -aké: jednaký, dvojaký, trojaký, štvoraký, desatoraký, koľkoraký*, etc. or adverbial form *-ako: jednako, dvojako, trojako, štvorako*, etc.

The generic numerals can have the characteristics of qualitative adjectives or of adverbs of manner.

The indefinite generic numerals are: *mnohoraký, niekoľkoraký, mnohorako, niekoľkorako*.

## MULTIPLICATIVE NUMERALS

Multiplicative numerals indicate a multiple number of individuals, things, qualities and actions.

If they precede nouns they have the forms of adjectives. If they modify adjectives, verbs or adverbs, they have the forms of adverbs or petrified constructions.

They are formed:

a) from the cardinal or the group-numerals connected with the adjective *-násobný: dvojnásobný, trojnásobný, pätnásobný, desaťnásobný, stonásobný, tisícnásobný*, etc. ; from the adjective form also an adverbial form is derived: *dvojnásobne, trojnásobne*, etc. ;

b) from the group-numerals by the suffix *-itý: dvojitý, trojitý*.

In the adverbial forms they have the meaning of adjectives: *dvojnásobne veľký*.

In the adverbial form they are derived:

a) from the noun *raz, razy, ráz* and numerals: *raz, dva razy, tri razy, štyri razy, päť ráz, desať ráz, mnoho ráz, viac ráz*, etc. ;

b) by the petrified constructions *jedenkrát, dvakrát, trikrát, desaťkrát, tisíckrát* ;

c) from the group-numerals by the suffix *-mo: dvojmo, trojmo, štvormo*. By these numerals we express that the thing occurs in a pair, in groups or batches of three, four. The multiplicative numerals thus formed do not occur with the numeral 5 and higher.

When the multiplicative numerals stand with a noun they are its congruent attributes. The petrified constructions or the adverbial forms help to express the adverbial modifier of measure.

## ORDINAL NUMERALS

Ordinal numerals indicate the order of the counted individuals and things. They do not express the number of individuals or things, but only indicate the place occupied by individuals or things in an ordered sequence.

Ordinal numerals are derived from cardinal numerals by means of the suffixes *-ý, -á, -é* and *-í, -ia, -ie*: *piaty* (the fifth), *siedmy* (the seventh), *desiaty, tretí, tisíci*. Only the numerals *prvý* (the first), *druhý* (second), *štvrtý* (the fourth) have a different base. The rhythmical rule applies in the numerals *piaty, šiesty, siedmy*, etc.

After the numeral *pol* the genitive singular of the ordinal numerals of the masculine and neuter has the old nominal form: *pol druha* (one and half), *pol treťa, pol štvrtá litra mlieka*. The feminine numerals have the normal genitive form: *pol tretej, pol druhej hodiny* (half past one).

Ordinal numerals have the same character as adjectives and are declined on the paradigm "pekný" and "cudzí". With a noun they have the function of the congruent attributes in the sentence.

The ordinal numerals *21 – 29, 31 – 39...* are written separately: *dvadsiaty prvý, dvadsiaty piaty, tridsiaty deviaty*. When inverted, e.g. *jedenadvadsiaty*, they are written together.

The numerals *sto* and *tisíc* do not take the ordinal form when expressing the higher order: *sto prvý, sto desiaty, dvesto dvadsiaty, tisíc prvý, tisíc deväťsto štyridsiaty ôsmy rok*, etc. They are written separately as cardinal numerals.

## INDEFINITE NUMERALS

Indefinite numerals indicate a quantity of individuals or things. By meaning and form they belong to the group of definite numerals. Therefore their meaning is the same as in the following numerals:

a) cardinal: *mnoho, málo, viac, najviac, veľa, hodne, koľko, toľko, niekoľko, máločo, pár*;

b) multiplicative: *mnohonásobný, viacnásobný, viackrát, menej ráz, koľkokrát, koľko ráz, niekoľkonásobne*;

c) ordinal: *koľký, toľký*.

Indefinite numerals, similarly as definite ones, can be:

a) non-inflectional, and then they are considered as adverbs of measure: *mnoho, veľa – viac – najviac, málo – menej – najmenej, čo najviac, priveľa, veľa-veľa*;

b) inflectional, and then they are declined as adjectives.

The counted object with non-inflectional indefinite numerals is usually in the genitive as it is with cardinal numerals. If an individual is referred to, it is in the genitive plural and if material nouns are referred to, they are in the genitive singular. If this construction is the subject in a sentence the verb has the impersonal form (3rd person singular neuter): *Veľa detí muselo stáť*. (Many children had to stand.)

Cardinal indefinite numerals are not declined even after prepositions. They have the non-inflectional form when preceding the simple cases as the definition of

measure: *Ešte pred pár dňami nič nevedel.* (He didn't know anything a few days ago.) *Pár vetami povedal všetko.* (He said everything in a few sentences.)

Quantity is also expressed by the nouns: *množstvo* (quantity), *väčšina* (majority), *kus*, *kúštik* (a bit), *kopa* (a lots), *pohár* (glass), *tanier* (plate), *rok* (year), etc. *Mal kopu listov.* (He had lots of letters.) *Nemal ani kúsok chleba.* (He didn't have a bit of bread.)

## NUMERICAL NOUNS

Fractions are expressed by forms derived from ordinal numerals by the suffix *-ina*: *tretina* (a third), *štvrtina* (a quarter), *pätina* (a fifth), *desatina*, *dvadsatina*, *stotina*, *tisícina*. These are nouns and are declined on the paradigm "žena".

The numeral *pol* (half) is non-inflectional and the counted object is in the genitive singular: *pol metra* (half a metre), *pol dňa* (half a day), *pol hodiny* (half an hour). If this construction is the subject of a sentence, the verb is in the impersonal form: *Pol kila mäsa sa stratilo.* (Half a kilogram of meat was lost.)

The numeral *pol*, *polo* is used to form compound nouns: *polrok* (half-year), *polootvorený* (half-opened), *polozatvorený* (half-closed), *polostrov* (peninsula), etc.

The numeral *štvrt'* (quarter) is a noun declined on the paradigm "kost". It is non-inflectional in the following expressions: *štvrt' kila*, *štvrt' hodiny*. In other expressions it is inflectional: *tri štvrt'e na tri* (a quarter to three).

Numerical nouns express certain numbers as things: *jednotka* (a one), *dvojka*, *trojka*, *štvorka*, *pätorka*, *desiatka*, *dvadsiatka*, *stovka*, *tisicka*. They indicate figures, money, banknotes, teams of horses (*dvojka*, *trojka*...), sport terms (*jedenástka*).

## PARTITIVE NUMERAL EXPRESSIONS

In older sources we find partitive numerals. These are in fact partitive numeral expressions, constructed with the distributive preposition *po* and the locative and the nominative plural of the cardinal numerals, or with the preposition *po* and the group-numerals or multiplicative numerals, e.g. *po jednom*, *po dvoch*, *po päťoro*, *po sedem ráz*...

These expressions indicate in what numerical groups the separate objects exist or into what groups their number is divided.

From among the indefinite numerals, the expressions *po niekoľko*, *po menej*, *po málo*... are included here.

## NUMERAL CONSTRUCTIONS EXPRESSING AN APPROXIMATE NUMBER

An approximate numerical datum can be expressed:

a) with the aid of constructions with particles, e.g. *asi desať* (about ten), *okolo*

*päťdesiat* (about fifty), *zo dvadsať* (about twenty), *vyše sto* (more than one hundred);

b) by joining two numerals: *dva-tri dni* (two-three days), *päť-šest rokov*, *sto-dvesto korún...*; *deň-dva* (a day or two)...

## VERBS

### MEANING OF VERBS

Verbs are inflectional parts of speech expressing the action or state of subject in the broadest sense of the word and having lexical-grammatical categories, as e.g. the grammatical categories of time, mood, voice and concord.

Verbs are thus names of qualities of things that are understood dynamically as processes, phenomena changing in the course of time.

Verbs name the qualities of something (some independently existing phenomenon, reality). They are related to words which are the names of independently existing phenomena (nouns) or that refer to independently existing phenomena (pronouns).

The verb as a part of speech is also defined by the system of lexical-grammatical categories.

The basic function of the verb in a sentence is the predicate. It can, however, function as some other members of the sentences.

### CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

The verb is a very complicated part of speech with a very rich semantic differentiation and variety of forms. Thus, different criteria can be used to classify verbs.

From the semantic and syntactic points of view verbs are divided into:

- a) auxiliary verbs,
- b) autonomous verbs.

### Auxiliary Verbs

The role of auxiliary verbs is to add some semantic component of a name, or to express verbal categories. Auxiliary verbs create the relationship of predication between two non-verbal expressions without adding any additional lexical meaning. E.g. *Nebo je modré.* (The sky is blue.) *Bratislava je hlavné mesto.* (Bratislava is the capital.) *Zajtra má byť teplo.* (It should be warm tomorrow.) The words *modrý*, *hlavné mesto*, *teplo* are not verbs, but the auxiliary verbs enable them to act as the

predicate or the base of the sentence. Any part of speech can have the function of predicate with the auxiliary verbs.

Auxiliary verbs are usually divided into: inchoative, modal and copulas.

## Inchoative Verbs

Inchoative verbs are the auxiliary verbs expressing the phases of the action expressed in the following infinitive of the autonomous verb.

They are also called “aspectual” verbs. These verbs help to express the phases of action, and that is usually done by means of the category of aspect in Slavonic verbs.

Inchoative verbs may be perfective as well as imperfective. The infinitive of the autonomous verb following an inchoative verb, however, can only be imperfective. E.g. *začal písať* (he started to write), *prestáva snežiť* (it stops snowing). By means of these verbs we can indicate the initial, continuing or final phases of the action.

a) The initial phase. The beginning of the action, or process is expressed by means of the auxiliary verb. The most frequent are: *zачаť, začínať*; *počať, počínať* – to begin, to start; *pustiť sa, púšťať sa, dať sa (= začať)* – to set about, to take to, to go in. E.g. *začína pršať* (it's starting to rain), *počína sa búriť* (he begins to rebel), *pustil sa skákať* (he started jumping), *dal sa bežať* (he started running), etc.

b) The continuous phase. The auxiliary verb is used to express an uninterrupted action or process. Here we use the verb *ostať, ostávať* (to remain), *neprestať, neprestávať* (to carry on, to keep on, to go on), *neustať, neustávať* (not to stop), etc. E.g. *ostal písať* (he went on writing), *neprestáva pršať* (it does not stop raining).

c) The final phase. The auxiliary verb expresses the finish, conclusion of an action or process. The verbs *prestať, prestávať* (to stop) are used here. E.g. *prestal skákať* (he stopped jumping), *prestáva pršať* (it stops raining).

## Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are verbs expressing emotional, causal and other qualities of the action expressed by the infinitive that follows.

Modal verbs are connected to the infinitive of another verb, expressing or determining the part of its meaning given by the category of mood: therefore, they are called modal verbs. There is a large number of such verbs: *môcť* (can), *mať* (ought to), *chcieť* (to want), *dať* (to give), *smieť* (may), *vedieť* (to know), *potrebovať* (to need), *dokázať* (to prove), *túžiť* (to desire), etc.

## Copulas

Copulas are the auxiliary verbs whose main role is to indicate the grammatical meaning of person, time and mood. In the sentence they connect the non-verbal part of the predicate with the subject thus forming predication.

Copulas (as well as auxiliaries) are not autonomous.

Examples of copulas: *byť, bývať* (to be), *stať sa, stávať sa* (to become), *ostať, ostávať* (to remain), *prísť* (to come), *mať* (ought to), *zdať sa* (to seem), *javiť sa* (to appear), *vyzeráť* (to look like), *vidieť* (to see).

## Autonomous Verbs

Autonomous verbs have a full lexical meaning and express the dynamic quality of things. Autonomous verbs indicate an ongoing action.

Full meaning is also preserved in connection with the infinitive of another autonomous verb. For example, both the verbs in the construction *žiadal poslať* (he required to send) express independent action, though carried out by the same person. Most verbs are autonomous. Their main and most frequent syntactic function is to serve as predicate.

According to the semantic and grammatical criteria, autonomous verbs are divided into: a) verbs of action, b) verbs of state.

Verbs of action express the activity carried out by the bearer of the action, most often by the subject. Examples: *písať* (to write), *volať* (to call), *nosiť* (to carry), *pracovať* (to work).

Verbs of state express the state or a change in the state of a person or thing. Examples: *černieť sa* (to appear black), *belieť sa* (to appear white), *červeňať sa* (to blush), *zablesknúť sa* (to sparkle).

Reflexive verbs form a separate group. They have a special component in their forms – *sa* or *si*. This component can have these different functions: a) It can have the value of an obligatory morpheme, e.g. *smiať sa* (to laugh), *všimáť si* (to notice). b) It can have the form of the reflexive pronoun forming the construction with the verb, e.g. *česať sa* (to comb one's hair), *veriť si* (to believe in oneself).

We distinguish two basic groups of the reflexive verbs in Slovak:

1. reflexive verbs without any non-reflexive counterparts, they are called reflexivatum, e.g. *smiať sa* (to laugh), *dať sa* (to succeed), *všimáť si* (to notice)...;
2. reflexive verbs that have the non-reflexive counterparts, e.g. *volať sa – volať* (to be called – to call), *pospať si – pospať* (take a nap – to nap)... These are called the reflexive uses of non-reflexive verbs.

## GRAMMATICAL AND LEXICAL-GRAMMATICAL CATEGORIES OF VERBS

Slovak verbs have the following grammatical and lexical-grammatical categories: grammatical categories: concord, tense, mood, voice; the lexical-grammatical categories: aspect, intention.

## The Category of Concord

Verbs express the dynamic characteristics of independently existing phenomena and are related to words that are the names of nouns or stand for (pronouns) those phenomena. This relation between the action and its bearer is given by means of the category of concord which may have three forms: concord of person and number, concord of person, number and gender, concord of gender, number and case.

### Concord of Person and Number

With regard to the verb, the subject may indicate an active, i.e. a direct or a passive, i.e. an indirect participation in a statement. If the action expressed by the verb is carried out by the speaker, then it is the 1st person (*ja*); if carried out by the participant to whom we speak, it is the 2nd person (*ty*); and if carried out by the non-participant, it is the 3rd person (*on, ona, ono*).

The bearer of the action may be in the first, second or third person; it may be either one individual or several. If one individual is referred to, we call it singular, if several, we call it plural.

If the subject is in the position of the first person singular, then the verb will have the form of the first person singular (*vidím* – I see), if the subject is in the position of the first person plural, then the verb will have the grammatical form of the first person plural (*vidíme* – we see) – it is the same in the second and third persons. Pronouns can be omitted.

This does not apply to the impersonal verbs where the relation to a subject is lacking. The subject is either not taken into account (*vidí sa* – it is seen), or it does not exist at all (*prší* – it rains). And as such verbs are not related to any subject to show concord with, they have only the so called “zero person” whose function is fulfilled by the 3rd person singular in Slovak.

All the three persons of the singular and plural are used in the indicative and conditional moods. In the imperative mood there exist only the forms of the 2nd person singular and the 1st and 2nd person plural.

### Concord of Person, Number and Gender

Besides concord in person and number, verbs also show agreement with their subject in gender. Concord of person and number is expressed in the finite form, that of gender is shown in the participle. Verb forms in which participles are employed are the past tense, the conditional mood, the passive voice. E.g. *Ja som pracoval/pracovala*. (I worked.) *Sestra písala*. (Sister was writing.) *Dieťa by bolo prišlo*. (The child would have come.) *My sme boli pochválení*. (We were praised.) *Oni by boli chválení*. (They would be praised.) Concord of gender in the past tense and in the conditional mood can be seen only in the singular as the “1”-participle has only the form ending in *-li* in plural, which is common for all the three persons. In impersonal verbs

neutralization in person takes place (3rd person sg.) and also neutralization in gender. This function is fulfilled by the neuter. E.g. *Sneží.* (It is snowing.) *Snežilo.* (It was snowing.)

## Concord of Gender, Number and Case

This type of concord is to be found only in the participles that can be declined (i.e. all except the “I”-participle). Concord of gender, number and case is the same as it is by adjectives: *napísaný list* (written letter), *napísanému listu* (to the written letter), *tečúcou vodou* (by the flowing water)...

## The Category of Tense

Each Slovak verb has the capacity to express tense with the help of the grammatical means.

The action realized at the time of the utterance is called the present, the action realized before the time of the utterance is called the past and the action which is to be realized in future is called the future tense. According to this we distinguish verbs in the present (*píše*), the past (*písal*), and the future tense (*bude písať*). Also the past perfect tense can be expressed in Slovak (*bol písať*).

There are some limitations in the category of tense with regard to mood and aspect: in the indicative the category of time is employed in its full extent; there are no tenses in the imperative and the future tense lacks the conditional mood. In the perfective verbs the form of the present tense implies a future meaning.

## The Category of Mood

A speaker expresses his view in each utterance. He can do so lexically or grammatically. In the latter case we deal with the grammatical category of mood. There are three moods in Slovak: indicative, conditional and imperative.

In the indicative the speaker states a fact which in addition may be qualified by a negation or an interrogation. He states that it existed, exists or will exist. E.g. *Dievča píše.*

By means of the conditional he essentially expresses an eventual fact, liable to happen or one that he wishes to be real. E.g. *Dievča by písalo.*

By the imperative the speaker expresses that he wants the recipient to carry out an action. E.g.: *Dievča, píš!*

## The Category of Voice

The category of voice derives from the relation between the subject and the action. This relation can be active and passive.



The relation is active when the agent is expressed in the subject. Examples: *Krajičír ušil nový oblek.* (The tailor has made a new suit.) *Slnko dnes svieti.* (The sun shines today.)

The relation is passive when the grammatical subject is affected by the verbal action. Examples: *Dom bol postavený.* (The house was built.) *Vrchy sú pokryté snehom.* (The mountains are covered with snow.)

The system of the active and passive forms, however, is to be found only with the objective transitive verbs since they alone permit to distinguish between the agent and the goal. The other verbs are always active. Examples: *bude pršať* (it will be raining), *je zamrznuté* (it is frozen).

The passive voice can be expressed in two ways: by means of the compound passive and by the reflexive passive.

The compound passive voice is made up of the past participle of the autonomous verb and the corresponding forms of the auxiliary verb *byť* (*som chválený* – I am praised, *bol si chválený* – you were praised, *budeme chválení* – we shall be praised, *boli by chválení* – they would be praised, *buď chválený* – be praised!, *byť chválený* – to be praised).

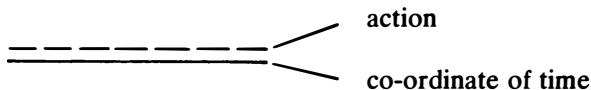
The reflexive passive is made up of the reflexive pronoun *sa* and the 3rd person of the verb (*predáva sa* – is sold, *čítajú sa* – are read).

The reflexive passive voice is to be found only with objective transitive verbs: *písať, variť, kupovať...*

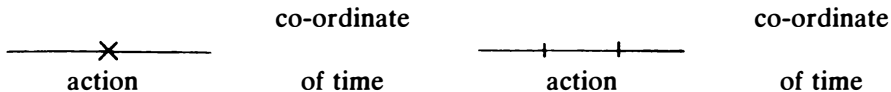
## The Verbal Aspect

The verbal aspect is the lexical-grammatical category. An action may be considered either as continuous, or as a finished, limited fact. According to this there are in Slovak imperfective verbs (*čítať* – to read, *písať* – to write, *brať* – to take, *padáť* – to fall, *niešť* – to carry) and perfective verbs (*prečítať, napísať, vziať, padnúť, odniesť...*). Slovak verbs thus show a two-term contrast.

Slovak verbs are either perfective or imperfective. The aspect does not depend on the length of the verbal action. The verbs are either perfective or imperfective regardless of the duration of the action in question.



The perfective verb is the marked member of the aspect pair. The action is not only named but it also indicates that the action is considered as a completed fact; it does not proceed along the co-ordinate of time, but intersects it at a certain point or occupies a limited section on it.



The form of the future tense is a convenient criterion for determining the aspect of a verb. If it is possible to form the future tense with the verb *byť*, then the verb is imperfective: *písať* → *budem písať* (to write → I shall write), *hľadať* → *budem hľadať* (to look for → I shall look for), *padať* → *budem padať* (to fall → I shall be falling). If the form of the future tense is equivalent to that of the present tense, then the verb is perfective: *napísať* → *napíšem* (present and future), *nájsť* → *nájdem*, *vziať* → *vezmem*...

Perfective verbs are often derived from imperfective by prefixation:

*volať* → *zavolať* (to call)  
*maľovať* → *namaľovať* (to paint)  
*hodiť* → *vyhodiť* (to throw → to throw away)  
*plávať* → *odplávať* (to swim → to swim away)

But the relation between the verbs of the aspectual pair is not always expressed by the existence or non-existence of a prefix. For example the verbs *paďať* (to drop) – *padnúť* (to fall), *kupovať* – *kúpiť* (to buy) do not have any prefixes, the latter elements of the pairs (*padnúť*, *kúpiť*) being perfective.

The aspectual pair, however, can also be derived by affixation. For example, imperfective verbs are derived from perfective by means of the affixes *-a-*, *-áva-/iava-*, *-ova-*, *-úva-*, e.g.

*skrýť* → *skrývať* (to hide)  
*požičať* → *požičiavať* (to lend)  
*dosiahnuť* → *dosahovať* (to reach)

Slovak also has verbs of both aspects: *počuť* (to hear), *poznať* (to know), *promovať* (to graduate), *dekorovať* (to decorate) and many other loan verbs. On the other hand, some verbs of only one aspect also exist: *byť* (to be), *mať* (to have) and the modal verbs. It is not possible to form the counterpart of the other aspect to these verbs. There are also several verbs with different forms for each of the aspects: *brať* (imper.) – *vziať* (perf.) (to take), *klásť* – *položiť* (to lay), *hovoriť* (to speak) – *povedať* (to say).

In English there is no category of aspect (vid). It is therefore expressed in some other way, usually analytically, or not at all. The difference in expressing the aspect is best shown in the forms of the past tense:

	imperfective	perfective
Slov.	čítal	prečítal
Engl.	he read (he was reading)	he has read

Note the aspect in the present tense :

Slov.	čítam (čítavam)	prečítam
Engl.	I am reading (I read)	I shall read

## The Intention

The intention is the lexical-grammatical category. It is a characteristic property of verbs to express subject and object, or subject only, or object only, or to be non-substant.

According to this there are in Slovak these types of intention :

1. subjectional-objectional (*Brat číta knihu* – Brother is reading a book);
2. subjectional (*Dieťa spí* – The child sleeps);
3. objectional (*Smädí ma* – I am thirsty);
4. non-substantial (*Sneží* – It is snowing).

Further examples :

1. *písať* (to write), *nosiť* (to carry), *vítať* (to welcome), *čistiť* (to clean), *jesť* (to eat), *počuť* (to hear), *kopať* (to dig), *kúpiť* (to buy), *požičať* (to borrow), *stratiť* (to lose), *stretnúť* (to meet), *pozvať* (to invite), *prať* (to wash), *šiť* (to sew), *pomáhať* (to help), *odporovať* (to resist);
2. *sedieť* (to sit), *utekať* (to run), *ísť* (to go), *bojovať* (to fight), *lietať* (to flow), *visieť* (to hang), *ležať* (to lie), *stáť* (to stand), *cestovať* (to travel), *žiť* (to live), *zomrieť* (to die), *šoférovať* (to drive), *dôjsť* (to arrive), *skákať* (to jump), *klesať* (to sink);
3. *chutiť* (to taste), *slušať* (to suit), *bolieť* (to hurt), *strašiť* (to frighten), *zdať sa* (to seem), *snívať sa* (to dream);
4. *blýskať sa* (to lighten), *pršať* (to rain), *mrholiť* (to drizzle), *hrmieť* (to thunder), *stmievať sa* (to get dark), *peniť* (to foam), *iskriť* (to sparkle), *duť* (to blow), *mrznúť* (to freeze), *ochladiť sa* (to cool), *svitať* (to dawn).

## MORPHOLOGICAL STRUCTURE OF VERB FORMS

From the morphological point of view verbs have two parts : lexical and grammatical, each of which have one or more morphemes.

The lexical part of each verb consists of the root morpheme (*pís-ať*). In addition to the root morpheme, there may be the derivative (*vy-písať*) or the modifying (*pís-a-v-ať*) morphemes in each verb.

The grammatical part of verb has the thematic morphemes forming the stem (*rob-i-t', chyt-a-t'*), the form morphemes forming the given form (*rob-i-t', chyt-aj-úc, chyt-a-n-ý*) and the relational morphemes forming the system of the suffixes or personal endings (*chyt-á-m, chyt-á-š, chyt-á-Ø...*). Also the morpheme of concord may occur, expressing the number and gender in the past tense and in the conditional

mood (*robi-l-∅, robi-l-a, robi-l-i...*). In the analytical verb forms there are also morphemes with the character of autonomous words (*čítal-∅ som, čítal-∅ by som, číta sa...*).

If we take away the personal relational or form morpheme we get the verb stem.

In Slovak we distinguish the present stem and the infinitive stem. The former can sometimes be of two types (I. and II.).

Example :

chyt-á-m	chyt-	= stem morpheme
chyt-á-š	-á-	= thematic morpheme
chyt-á-∅	-m, -š, -∅	= personal relational morphemes
chytá-m, -š, -∅	chytá-	= I. present tense stem
chytaj-ú	chytaj-	= II. present tense stem
chyta- (from the inf. <i>chytat</i> )	chyta-	= infinitive stem

The above forms of the verb stems are always the starting point for all the verb forms.

## CONJUGATION OF THE VERB

Slovak verbs are divided according to the ending of the verb stem into five classes and fourteen paradigms for the conjugation.

### The Verb Classes and Paradigms

Class	Paradigm and its characteristic forms			Combinations of the thematic morphemes
	3rd sg.	3rd pl.	inf.	
I.	1. chyt-á-∅	chyt-aj-ú	chyt-a-ť	á-aj-a
II.	2. rozum-ie-∅	rozum-ej-ú	rozum-ie-ť	ie-ej-ie
III.	3. nes-ie-∅ 4. hyn-ie-∅ 5. tr-ie-∅ 6. ber-ie-∅	nes-∅-ú hyn-∅-ú tr-∅-ú ber-∅-ú	nies-∅-ť hyn-ú-ť trie-∅-ť br-a-ť	ie-∅-∅ ie-∅-ú ie-∅-∅ ie-∅-a
IV.	7. češ-e-∅ 8. žn-e-∅ 9. chudn-e-∅ 10. žuj-e-∅ 11. pracuj-e-∅	češ-∅-ú žn-∅-ú chudn-∅-ú žuj-∅-ú pracuj-∅-ú	češ-a-ť ža-∅-ť chudn-ú-ť žu-∅-ť pracov-a-ť	e-∅-a e-∅-∅ e-∅-ú e-∅-∅ e-∅-a
V.	12. rob-í-∅ 13. vid-í-∅ 14. krič-í-∅	rob-∅-ia vid-∅-ia krič-∅-ia	rob-i-ť vid-ie-ť krič-a-ť	í-∅-i í-∅-ie í-∅-a

## The Paradigm “chytat – chytám”

The infinitive thematic morpheme *-a-* is always the same, but the present thematic morpheme can have these variants: *á – ia, á – a* eventually *-aj*.

The number of verbs conjugated according to the paradigm “chytat – chytám” is rather great (7500 of all the 24 880 verbs). They can be divided into several types. These types, however, are not equally productive.

A relatively closed group of verbs is represented by the imperfective verbs without prefixes, e.g. *búrať, bývať, cegať, čítať, dívať sa, dúfať, dýchať, gágať, hádať, hľadať, hnevať, hrať, chovať, chýbať, chytat, konať, kvapkať, kýchať, kývať, mať, miňať, namáhať sa, padať, písať, plávať, počítať, pomáhať, prenášať, pýtať sa, rátať, rozprávať, sadať, sekať, skúmať, skúšať, snívať, spievať, spomínať, starať sa, stavať, striekať, strihať, šepkať, škrtat, šmýkať sa, štrngať, tackat sa, tárať, tikať, triafať, trhať, trvať, týkať sa, utekať, váhať, vešať, vítať, volať, voňať, vracat, všimať si, zabávať sa, zaoberať sa, zívat, želať, žiadať.*

A special group is represented by the imperfective deverbatives derived from perfective verbs with prefixes, with the aid of the morpheme *-a-*. This is the productive type of verbs even today. Examples: *pripekať, vypínať, začínať, prerábať, prebárať sa, poučať, načierať, umierať, odvážať, poháňať, pretekať, natáčať, uvádzať, prebiehať...*

An open group consists of the deverbatives formed by the morpheme *-va-*. They too represent the productive type.

The repetitive verbs formed from basic verbs whose infinitive stems end in a vowel, with the aid of the morpheme *-va-*, also appear to be productive. Examples: *prosievať, nosievať, dávať, brávať, stretávať...*

The verbs formed by the alteration of the morphemes *-ova-* and *-úva-* are also productive.

On the one hand, these are verbs such as *nocúvať, tancúvať*, on the other hand, they are the imperfective verbs as counterparts of perfective ones, e.g. *opotrebovať – opotrebúvať, pomenúvať, spracúvať...*

An open group is also represented by the imperfective verbs formed by the morpheme *-ka-*, for example, *achkať, jajkať, híkať, čvirikať, kikirikať, člapkať, ťapkať, tykať, vykať, bežkať, ležkať, sadkať, papkať, robkať, skackať, spinkať, krivkať, kyvkať...*

## The Paradigm “rozumieť – rozumiem”

According to this paradigm we conjugate verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-ie/e-* and the present thematic morpheme *-ie/ej-*, e.g. *rozum-ej-ú, rozum-ej-úc, rozum-ej-te...*

Some 900 of all the 24 880 verbs are included in the paradigm “rozumieť – rozumiem”. They can be divided into several groups which, however, are not equally numerous.

The closed group of a small number of verbs is represented by the imperfective verbs of one aspect only: *bdieť, čnieť, hovieť si, skvieť sa, stariet sa, tlieť, znieť, zrieť*.

The number of verbs derived from those with the prefixes is also small: *vyhovieť, zaskvieť sa, dospieť, doznieť, vyznieť, zaznieť*.

The open group is formed by the de-adjectives: *belieť, belasieť, obelasieť, deravieť, jasnieť, zjasnieť, pyšnieť, silnieť, ošedivieť, zdomácnieť, lačnieť, belieť sa, černieť sa, červenieť sa, kamenieť, vlčieť, ovdovieť, osirieť, osamieť*.

### **The Paradigm “niešť – nesiem”**

According to the paradigm “niešť – nesiem” we conjugate verbs that do not have the infinitive thematic morpheme and whose present thematic morpheme is *-ie/ø-*. Their roots end in a vowel.

The zero thematic morpheme in the present is to be found only in some forms: *nes-ø-ú, nes-ø-úc, nes-ø-úci...* The root of these verbs is usually monosyllabic and ends in a vowel.

The consonant at the end of the root can alternate as follows:

*d/dʹ/s: ved-ú – ved-ie – vies-ť*

*h/z/c: moh-ol – môž-e – môc-ť*

*h/z/z: strieh-ol – strež-ie – striez-ť*

*t/tʹ/s: plet-ú – plet-ie – plies-ť*

*k/č/c: piek-ol – peč-ie – piec-ť*

The paradigm “niešť – nesiem” comprises only some 300 of all the verbs. They are, for example, these in the closed group of imperfective verbs and verbs derived from them by means of prefixes: *môcť, niešť, pášť, piecť, rášť, tiecť, triašť, viezť, viesť, vliecť*.

Verbs with prefixes are, for example: *pohrýzť, pomôcť, vymôcť, napášť, vyniesť, upiecť, popliesť, narášť, naticť, potriašť, obliecť, vyzliecť...*

### **The Paradigm “hynúť – hyniem”**

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-ú/u-* and the present thematic morpheme *-ie/ø-*.

Only some 100 of all Slovak verbs are included in the paradigm “hynúť – hyniem”. It is a closed group: *kynúť, hrnúť, kanúť, planúť, plynúť, šinúť, tanúť, vanúť, vinúť, dmúť sa*.

Here are also included perfective verbs derived from those formed by prefixes as well as those whose basic forms without prefixes are not used: *zahynúť, vyhynúť, zhrnúť, uplynúť, vyplynúť, vyšinúť, privanúť, spomenúť si, pripomenúť, napomenúť, odpočinúť si, vysunúť, zasunúť, presunúť, odsunúť*.

## The Paradigm “trieť – triem”

Here are included verbs with the present thematic morpheme *-ie/θ-* but without an infinitive thematic morpheme. The present thematic morpheme is never shortened because the root of these verbs consists of a consonant cluster ending in the consonant *r*. Only the roots of the verbs *mliet* and *smiet* end in a different consonant. The zero present thematic morpheme is to be found only in some forms: *tr-θ-ú*, *tr-θ-úc*, *tr-θ-úci*...

The root of the verb *mliet* and of those derived from it by prefixes undergoes alteration. The root is syllabic in the present stem: *mel-ie*, *po-mel-ie*, *zo-mel-ie*...

The morphemic characteristics of verbs of the paradigm “trieť – triem” is lucid. The exception here is the verb *smiet* which entered this paradigm only later.

Only 100 of all verbs belong to the paradigm “trieť – triem”.

Here are included the verbs *driet*, *mliet*, *mriet*, *priet*, *smiet*, *zriet*, *vriet* and those derived from them: *načriet*, *začriet*, *zodriet*, *nadriet sa*, *zomliet*, *domliet*, *namliet*, *vymliet*, *premliet*, *umriet*, *zomriet*, *vymriet*, *odumriet*, *opriet*, *zapriet*, *odopriet*, *vypriet*, *zastriet*, *prestriet*, *rozostriet*, *natriet*, *rozotriet*, *zovriet*, *privriet*, *nazriet*, *pozriet sa*, *zazriet*, *uzriet*, *prezriet*, *vyzriet*, *prežriet*...

## The Paradigm “brať – beriem”

According to the paradigm “brať – beriem” we conjugate verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-a-* and the present thematic morpheme *-ie/θ-*.

Only about 100 verbs belong to this group. Some of them are e.g. *brať*, *drať*, *hnať*, *orať*, *prať*, *žrať* and those derived from them: *nadrať*, *obrať*, *vybrať*, *rozobrať*, *zobrať*, *odrať*, *predrať*, *vydrať*, *nadrať sa*, *vyhnať*, *zahnať*, *rozohnať*, *zohnať*, *zaorať*, *vyorať*, *rozorať*, *preorať*, *oprať*, *vyprať*, *preprať*, *naprať sa*, *postlať*, *zastlať*, *vystlať*, *zožrať*, *vyžrať*, *ožrať sa*...

## The Paradigm “česať – češem”

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-a-* and the present thematic morpheme *-e/θ-*.

Some 1300 verbs belong to this paradigm. They are, for example: *babrať*, *čarbať*, *česať*, *čliapať*, *dlbať*, *driapať*, *hádzasť*, *hrabať*, *hýbať*, *chrúmasť*, *kapasť*, *kašlasť*, *klamasť*, *klepasť*, *koktasť*, *kopasť*, *kúpasť*, *kývasť*, *lámasť*, *mazasť*, *pisasť*, *plakasť*, *revasť*, *rezasť*, *rúbasť*, *skákasť*, *sypasť*, *šibasť*, *štiepasť*, *štvasť*, *šúpasť*, *tesasť*, *viazasť*, *vládasť*, *zobasť*, *bľabotasť*, *buchotasť*, *cupotasť*, *čľapotasť*, *gagotasť*, *jagotasť sa*, *ligotasť sa*, *rapotasť*, *rehotasť sa*, *štebotasť*, *trkotasť*...

## The Paradigm “žať – žnem”

Here belong verbs with the present thematic morpheme *-e/∅-* and without the infinitive thematic morpheme.

Only 80 of all verbs belong to the paradigm “žať – žnem”. They are verbs with prefixes belonging to five verb bases :

1. *-čať*: *začať, začať sa, načať, počať,*
2. *-jať*: *jať, najasť, priať, zajať, dojať, pojať, objať, ujať sa, vziať, prevziať,*
3. *-päť*: *napäť, zapäť, vypäť, pripäť, prepäť, odpäť, rozopäť, vypäť sa, napäť sa,*
4. *-žať*: *žať (=kosiť), požať, nažať, vyžať, zožať,*
5. *-žať*: *zažať, zažať sa, rozžať.*

## The Paradigm “chudnúť – chudnem”

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-ú-* and the present thematic morpheme *-e/∅-*. The stem of these verbs is always closed, but there is the modifying morpheme *-n/ň-* between the stem and the thematic morpheme.

There are 1800 verbs in the paradigm “chudnúť – chudnem”.

Some of them are: *hasnúť, kradnúť, kvitnúť, lesknúť sa, liahnúť sa, miznúť, zmrznúť, schnúť, strieknuť, tísnuť, vädnúť, vládnuť, napnúť, vypnúť, potknúť sa, nadchnúť, primknúť sa, pohnúť, blysknúť, cúvnuť, chlipnúť, klesnúť, kýchnuť, pichnúť, siahnúť, šmyknúť sa, hrknúť, mrknúť, slabnúť, mladnúť, starnúť, blednúť, tvrdnúť, mäknúť, rednúť, hustnúť, žltnúť...*

## The Paradigm “žut’ – žujem”

Here are included verbs with the present thematic morpheme *-e/∅-* and without the infinitive thematic morpheme.

In the forms of the present tense the consonant *-j-* is added to the root of these verbs: *žuj-e, kryj-e, saj-e, plej-e, sej-e*. This variant of the root is characteristic for the present forms: *žuj-e, žuj-úc, žuj-úci*.

About 400 verbs are in the paradigm “žut’ – žujem”. They belong to a closed group of the basic imperfective verbs and those derived from them.

They are :

*biť, piť, šiť, žiť, viť* and their derivations,

*kryť, vryť, ryť, vyť* and their derivations,

*čuť, duť, kľuť, kuť, pluť, psuť, ruť sa, žuť* and their derivations,  
*sať* and its derivations,

*dieť, dieť sa, chvieť sa, plieť, spieť, zrieť* and their derivations,

*diať sa, hriať, liať, siať, smiať sa, viať* and their derivations.



## The Paradigm “pracovať – pracujem”

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-a-* and the present thematic morpheme *-e/∅-*. There is the modifying morpheme *-ov/uj-* to be found between the root and these morphemes.

The root of these verbs often ends in one consonant and rarely in a consonant cluster, e.g. *pracovať, vyráďovať, kefovať, dlhovať, bojovať, milovať, maľovať, oponovať, kupovať, znižovať, filmovať*.

Occasionally, the root morpheme of the loan verbs ends in the vowels *u, i* or *e*: *distribu-ovať, evaku-ovať, inštru-ovať, konštitu-ovať, vari-ovať, asoci-ovať, rekre-ovať* sa...

In many loan verbs the formant *-iz-* is added to the root creating thus the verbs ending in *-izovať*: *aktivizovať, automatizovať, centralizovať, elektrizovať, formalizovať, mobilizovať, organizovať, systemizovať, teoretizovať, vulgarizovať*...

6300 of all the 24 880 verbs entered in the “Dictionary of the Slovak Language”, belong to the paradigm “*pracovať – pracujem*”.

Such are e.g.: *vybaľovať, zahaľovať, unavovať, zaručovať, prerušovať, oslepuvať, zostavovať, poučovať, určovať, uvedomovať si, oduševňovať, strpčovať, skracovať, predlžovať, nanucovať, pracovať, modelovať, linkovať, plánovať, štrajkovať, faulovať, obchodovať, slabikovať, bilancovať, menovať, známkovať, pečiatkovať, číslovať, ďakovať, asphaltovať, pudrovať, gumovať, háčkovať, telefonovať, lyžovať, telegrafovať, gazdovať, učiteľovať, riaditeľovať, hosťovať, panovať, kraľovať, nocovať, zimovať, sviatkovať, parkovať, žrebovať, stopovať, kádrovať, obedovať, raňajkovať, olovrantovať, kompletizovať, romantizovať, civilizovať, motorizovať, realizovať, politizovať*...

## The Paradigm “robiť – robím”

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-i-* and the present thematic morpheme *-i/∅*.

The present thematic morpheme *-i-* is shortened when following a long syllable: *bráni, kúpi, nôti, pýši sa, kľmi*...

5400 verbs belong to the paradigm “*robiť – robím*”. They are: *cítiť, dariť sa, dojiť, dusiť, hovoriť, hroziť, ľubiť, mrholiť, nútiť, páčiť sa, páliť, patriť, prosiť, ráčiť, riešiť, učiť (sa), hodiť, chytiť, kúpiť, pustiť, skočiť, sľúbiť, streliť, zásobiť, vrátiť, osladiť, obohatiť, sušiť, ochudobniť, plniť, zaplniť, krátiť, zvýšiť, znížiť, rozšíriť, osvojiť si, urýchliť, nasýtiť, soliť, cukriť, zlátiť, mastiť, mydliť, hnojiť, zásobiť, ozdobiť, šatiť, ozubiť, raniť, zauzliť, drotáriť, roľníciť, vojenčiť, mládenčiť, slúžiť, susediť, cigániť, víťaziť, kupčiť*...

## The Paradigm “vidieť – vidím”

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-ie/e-* and the present thematic morpheme *-i/∅*.

The present thematic morpheme *-í-* is always long because it never follows a long syllable.

Only 200 verbs belong to the paradigm “*vidieť – vidím*”.

They are: *bolieť, dunieť, hľadieť, horieť, letieť, musieť, myslieť, sedieť, vidieť, visieť, vrvieť, rozhorieť sa, vyhorieť, zakrnieť, vykypieť, zaletieť, zamyslieť sa, vymyslieť, namyslieť, premyslieť, presedieť, nasedieť sa, posedieť si, utrpieť, rozvrátiť sa...*

### **The Paradigm “*kričať – kričím*”**

Here are included verbs with the infinitive thematic morpheme *-a-* and the present thematic morpheme *-í/∅*.

The present thematic morpheme *-í-* is never shortened because all the verbs of this paradigm have a short root syllable.

About 400 verbs are conjugated on the paradigm “*kričať – kričím*”. They are: verbs whose roots end in *č*: *bľačať, bľačať, fičať, fučať, jačať, kvičať, kričať, mlčať, trčať, vrčať...*

verbs whose roots end in *dž*: *cvendžať, erdžať, frndžať...*

verbs whose roots end in *š*: *čušať, pršať, slušať, sršať...*

verbs whose roots end in *ž*: *bežať, ležať, držať...*

verbs whose roots end in *šť*: *blyšťať sa, pišťať, prašťať, šušťať, vrešťať...*

verbs whose roots end in *žd*: *hvižďať, vržďať...*

Here also belongs the imperfective verb *spať – spím*.

### **FINITE AND NON-FINITE VERB FORMS**

Conjugation gives the inflectional forms of verbs, or it is the formation of the verb forms. All the verb forms are divided into finite and non-finite.

Finite verb forms express primarily the category of mood and the category of tense. They are the forms of the indicative conditional and imperative moods and the forms of the present, past and future tense. The impersonal forms of either impersonal or personal verbs do not express the category of person, although they can express the categories of mood and tense. Finite verb forms are divided into personal and impersonal forms.

Non-finite verb forms are the infinitive, the gerund, the active present participle, the active past participle, the past participle, the verbal noun.

Some of the non-finite verb forms can have the characteristics of nouns. The participles express the category of concord as adjectives which are declined together with the following noun. Verbal nouns express the categories of case, number and gender as nouns. Participles and verbal nouns are therefore classified as nominal forms.

Neither the gerund, nor infinitive has the characteristics of the noun.

According to their complexity the verb forms are divided into simple and analytical.

The simple verb form is equal to one word. The grammatical morphemes usually have the character of suffixes: They stand at the end of the word: *čaka-t*, *čaká-m*, *čakaj-ú*...

The analytical form is composed of two or more words. There are two types of analytical forms: the complex forms and the reflexive forms.

The grammatical element in the former is usually the verb *byť* (to be). In the complex passive voice the verb *bývať* can also be used.

The analytical forms are used to express the future tense, the past tense, the past perfect, the conditional mood and the passive voice.

The grammatical morpheme *by* is an important component in the conditional mood: *hovoril by som*, *bol by som hovoril*...

The reflexive verb form contains the grammatical morpheme *sa*. We recognize its reflexive passive form and its reflexive impersonal form.

The grammatical morpheme *sa* in the reflexive forms *ide sa*, *číta sa* is different from the lexical morpheme *sa* in the reflexive verbs as *bát sa*, *rozbehnúť sa*, *narodiť sa* as well as from the reflexive pronoun *sa* in the expression *umývať sa*, *holiť sa*, *osočovať sa*.

## THE FINITE VERB FORMS

### The Forms of the Present Indicative

#### The Active Forms

##### THE REGULAR VERBS

The forms of the present indicative are formed from the present stem of the imperfective verbs by the personal suffixes:

1st p. sg. *-m*  
2nd p. sg. *-š*  
3rd p. sg.  $\emptyset$

1st p. pl. *-me*  
2nd p. pl. *-te*  
3rd p. pl. *-ú/-u, -ia/-a*

##### THE IRREGULAR VERBS

###### 1. "byť"

1st p. sg. *som*  
2nd p. sg. *si*  
3rd p. sg. *je*

1st p. pl. *sme*  
2nd p. pl. *ste*  
3rd p. pl. *sú*

###### 2. "jest"

1st p. sg. *je-m*  
2nd p. sg. *je-š*  
3rd p. sg. *je- $\emptyset$*

1st p. pl. *je-me*  
2nd p. pl. *je-te*  
3rd p. pl. *jed-ia*

### 3. “vediet”

1st p. sg. *vie-m*  
2nd p. sg. *vie-š*  
3rd p. sg. *vie-Ø*

1st p. pl. *vie-me*  
2nd p. pl. *vie-te*  
3rd p. pl. *ved-ia*

### 4. “chcieť”

1st p. sg. *chce-m*  
2nd p. sg. *chce-š*  
3rd p. sg. *chce-Ø*

1st p. pl. *chce-me*  
2nd p. pl. *chce-te*  
3rd p. pl. *chc-ú*

### 5. “ísť”

1st p. sg. *ide-m*  
2nd p. sg. *ide-š*  
3rd p. sg. *ide-Ø*

1st p. pl. *ide-me*  
2nd p. pl. *ide-te*  
3rd p. pl. *id-ú*

### 6. “stáť”

1st p. sg. *stojí-m*  
2nd p. sg. *stojí-š*  
3rd p. sg. *stojí-Ø*

1st p. pl. *stojí-me*  
2nd p. pl. *stojí-te*  
3rd p. pl. *stoj-a*

## The Passive Forms

The passive forms of the present indicative are reflexive and analytical.

The reflexive passive forms take the grammatical morpheme *sa*; as a rule only the forms of the 3rd person sg. and pl. are used, rarely the forms of the 2nd person sg. and pl. These forms are usually used with the imperfective verbs (only with the intransitive verbs of action).

The analytical passive forms of the present indicative are formed by the present indicative of the verb *byť* with the past participle of the imperfective verbs (only the intransitive verbs of action).

1st p. sg. *som volaný, -á, -é*  
2nd p. sg. *si volaný, -á, -é*  
3rd p. sg. *je volaný, -á, -é*

1st p. pl. *sme volaní, -é*  
2nd p. pl. *ste volaní, -é*  
3rd p. pl. *sú volaní, -é*

The analytical passive voice is used in all persons, regardless of whether the subject of the sentence is animate or inanimate.

## The Forms of the Past Indicative

### The Active Forms

The past indicative is formed in the same way in all the verbs. The past indicative is the analytical form consisting of the “I”-participle of the autonomous verb and the grammatical morpheme expressing person.

The “1”-form is derived from the indicative stem with the suffix *-l*. We distinguish gender in the singular by means of the suffixes *-ø*, *-a*, *-o*. In the plural there is only the suffix *-i* and gender is not distinguished.

The grammatical morpheme indicating person has the following forms in the analytical form in the past:

1st p. sg. <i>som</i>	1st p. pl. <i>sme</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>si</i>	2nd p. pl. <i>ste</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>ø</i>	3rd p. pl. <i>ø</i>

The past indicative in Slovak has the following forms:

1st p. sg. <i>volal-ø, -i, -o som</i>	<i>bol-ø, -a, -o som</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>volal-ø, -a, -o si</i>	<i>bol-ø, -a, -o si</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>volal-ø, -a, -o ø</i>	<i>bol-ø, -a, -o ø</i>
1st p. pl. <i>volal-i sme</i>	<i>bol-i sme</i>
2nd p. pl. <i>volal-i ste</i>	<i>bol-i ste</i>
3rd p. pl. <i>volal-i ø</i>	<i>bol-i ø</i>

### The Passive Forms

The passive forms of the past indicative are either reflexive or analytical.

The passive reflexive forms differ from the active ones by the addition of the morpheme *sa*. We use especially the forms of the 3rd p. sg. and pl. of the imperfective as well as the perfective verbs. The other persons are unusual.

The analytical forms of the past indicative consist of the past indicative of the auxiliary verb *byť* and the past participles of the given verbs (only transitive verbs of action).

1st p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o som volaný, -á, -é</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o si volaný, -á, -é</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o ø volaný, -á, -é</i>
1st p. pl. <i>boli sme volaní, -é</i>
2nd p. pl. <i>boli ste volaní, -é</i>
3rd p. pl. <i>boli ø volaní, -é</i>

Analytical forms are used in all the persons.

### The Forms of the Past Perfect

#### The Active Forms

The past perfect indicative is also formed from the “1”-form of the verb and the grammatical morpheme with the form of the past indicative of the verb *byť*.

1st p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o som zavolal, -a, -o*  
2nd p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o si zavolal, -a, -o*  
3rd p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o Ø zavolal, -a, -o*

1st p. pl. *bol-i sme zavolali*  
2nd p. pl. *bol-i ste zavolali*  
3rd p. pl. *bol-i Ø zavolali*

The forms of the past perfect indicative of the verb *byť* are the following:

1st p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o som býval-Ø, -a, -o*  
2nd p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o si býval-Ø, -a, -o*  
3rd p. sg. *bol-Ø, -a, -o Ø býval-Ø, -a, -o*

1st p. pl. *bol-i sme býval-i*  
2nd p. pl. *bol-i ste býval-i*  
3rd p. pl. *bol-i Ø býval-i*

## The Forms of the Future Indicative

### The Active Forms

The future indicative is not formed in all the verbs in the same way. It can be formed in three ways:

1. The future indicative of the verb *byť* – *som* is derived from the stem *bude-/bud-* and the personal endings.

1st p. sg. <i>bude-m</i>	1st p. pl. <i>bude-me</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>bude-š</i>	2nd p. pl. <i>bude-te</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>bude-Ø</i>	3rd p. pl. <i>bud-ú</i>

2. The future indicative of all the imperfective verbs – except *byť* and *ísť* – is formed analytically as follows: the future forms of the verb *byť* are added to the infinitive forms of the autonomous verb.

1st p. sg. <i>budem žať</i>	1st p. pl. <i>budeme žať</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>budeš žať</i>	2nd p. pl. <i>budete žať</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>bude žať</i>	3rd p. pl. <i>budú žať</i>

3. The future indicative of many imperfective verbs can also be formed by adding the prefix *po-* to the forms of the present indicative *po-cestujem, po-nesiem, po-letím, po-vlečiem, po-bežím*.

The future of this type is characteristic particularly for the verbs of motion *ísť, letieť, bežať, lietať, niesť, viezť, viesť, hnať*.

## The Passive Forms

We can form the passive forms of the future tense in all the transitive verbs of action. They are either reflexive or analytical.

The reflexive passive future verb forms differ from the active forms in the morpheme *sa*: *pokosia* → *pokosia sa, budú kosit* → *budú sa kosit...*

The analytical passive future forms consist of the auxiliary verb *byť* and the past participle of the given autonomous verb:

1st p. sg. <i>budem volaný, -á, -é</i>	1st p. pl. <i>budeme volaní, -é</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>budeš volaný, -á, -é</i>	2nd p. pl. <i>budete volaní, -é</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>bude volaný, -á, -é</i>	3rd p. pl. <i>budú volaní, -é</i>

## The Forms of the Present Conditional

### The Active Forms

The present conditional is the analytical form. It is formed from the “I”-participle of the autonomous verb, the conditional morpheme and the personal morpheme *som, si, Ø, sme, ste, Ø*.

1st p. sg. <i>volal-Ø, -a, -o by som</i>	<i>bol-Ø, -a, -o by som</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>volal-Ø, -a, -o by si</i>	<i>bol-Ø, -a, -o by si</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>volal-Ø, -a, -o by Ø</i>	<i>bol-Ø, -a, -o by Ø</i>
1st p. pl. <i>volal-i by sme</i>	<i>bol-i by sme</i>
2nd p. pl. <i>volal-i by ste</i>	<i>bol-i by ste</i>
3rd p. pl. <i>volal-i by Ø</i>	<i>bol-i by Ø</i>

### The Passive Forms

The passive forms of the present conditional can be either reflexive or analytical.

The reflexive passive forms differ from the active ones only by the morpheme *sa*: *písal by – písal by sa, čítal by – čítal by sa...*

The analytical passive forms are formed from the conditional of the verb *byť* and the past participle of the transitive verbs of action.

1st p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o by som volaný, -á, -é</i>
2nd p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o by si volaný, -á, -é</i>
3rd p. sg. <i>bol, -a, -o by Ø volaný, -á, -é</i>
1st p. pl. <i>boli by sme volaní, -é</i>
2nd p. pl. <i>boli by ste volaní, -é</i>
3rd p. pl. <i>boli by Ø volaní, -é</i>

## The Forms of the Past Conditional

### The Active Forms

The past conditional is the analytical verb form. It is formed from the “I”-form of the autonomous verb, the conditional morpheme *by* and the personal morpheme *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *som*; *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *si*; *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *Ø*; *bol-i sme*, *bol-i ste*, *bol-i Ø*.

1st p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by som volal-Ø*, -a, -o

2nd p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by si volal-Ø*, -a, -o

3rd p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by Ø volal-Ø*, -a, -o

1st p. pl. *bol-i by sme volal-i*

2nd p. pl. *bol-i by ste volal-i*

3rd p. pl. *bol-i by Ø volal-i*

The past conditional of the verb *byť*:

1st p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by som býval-Ø*, -a, -o

2nd p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by si býval-Ø*, -a, -o

3rd p. sg. *bol-Ø*, -a, -o *by Ø býval-Ø*, -a, -o

1st p. pl. *bol-i by sme býval-i*

2nd p. pl. *bol-i by ste býval-i*

3rd p. pl. *bol-i by Ø býval-i*

### The Passive Forms

The passive forms of the past conditional can be either reflexive or analytical.

The reflexive passive forms differ from the active ones by additional morpheme *sa*: *bol by čítal*, *boli by čítali* → *bol by sa čítal*, *boli by sa čítali*; *bol by predal*, *boli by predali* → *bol by sa predal*, *boli by sa predali*...

The analytical forms of the past conditional are formed from the past conditional forms of the auxiliary verb *byť* and the past participle of the autonomous verb.

1st p. sg. *bol*, -a, -o *by som býval*, -a, -o *volaný*, -á, -é

2nd p. sg. *bol*, -a, -o *by si býval*, -a, -o *volaný*, -á, -é

3rd p. sg. *bol*, -a, -o *by Ø býval*, -a, -o *volaný*, -á, -é

1st p. pl. *boli by sme bývali volaní*, -é

2nd p. pl. *boli by ste bývali volaní*, -é

3rd p. pl. *boli by Ø bývali volaní*, -é



## The Forms of the Imperative

### The Active Forms

The imperative is a finite verb form which is formed from the imperative base and the personal ending.

The imperative base is formed from the second form of the present stem either without the imperative morpheme or with the morpheme *-i-*.

1. The imperative morpheme *-i-* is used only when the second form of the present stem ends in a consonant cluster unusual for the endings of Slovak words. Examples: *zapni-*, *mávní-*, *spomni-*, *tni-*, *vyprázdni-*, *začni-*, *zhasni-*, *zmizni-*, *zažni-*, *zapri-*, *utri-*, *prežri-*, *pošli-*, *mysli-*, *vezmi-*, *rozvi-*...

2. The imperative base is formed from the second form of the present stem without the imperative morpheme, when the form of the present stem mentioned ends in one consonant.

The personal endings in imperative are:

1st p. sg. —	1st p. pl. <i>-me</i>
2nd p. sg. $\emptyset$	2nd p. pl. <i>-te</i>
3rd p. sg. —	3rd p. pl. —

In Slovak the imperative forms are used in the 2nd p. sg. and the 1st and 2nd p. pl. There is no imperative form used in the 1st p. sg.

In the 3rd p. of both numbers imperative expressions are used. They are formed from the particle *nech* (let) and the relevant form of the present indicative.

Similarly, the expressive constructions as *nech sa prepadnem*, *nech umriem*, *nech uschnem* are used in the 1st p. sg.

The irregular verbs: *buďme*, *jedzme*, *vedzme*, *chcime*, *staňme sa*, *stojme*.

### The Passive Forms

The passive forms are also used in the imperative. They are either reflexive or analytical.

The reflexive passive forms differ from active forms only by taking the morpheme *sa*: *stavaj*, *stavajte* → *stavaj sa*, *stavajte sa*...

The analytical passive forms of the imperative are formed from the imperative forms of the auxiliary verb *byť* and the past participle of the autonomous verb:

2nd p. sg. <i>buď chválený</i>	1st p. pl. <i>buďme chválení</i>
	2nd p. pl. <i>buďte chválení</i>

## The Infinitive

The infinitive is formed from the first form of the infinitive stem of the verb taking the ending *-ť*: *chyta-ť, rozumie-ť, nies-ť, hynú-ť, trie-ť, bra-ť, česa-ť, ža-ť, chudnú-ť, žu-ť, pracova-ť, robi-ť, vidie-ť, kriča-ť, by-ť, jes-ť, vedie-ť, chcie-ť, ís-ť, sta-ť sa, stá-ť*.

## The Gerund

### The Active Forms

In standard Slovak we use the uniform gerund formed from the second present stem by the suffixes *-úc/-uc* or *-iac/-ac*.

By means of *-úc/-uc* we form the gerund of regular verbs conjugated according to the following verbs: *chytať, rozumieť, niesť, hynúť, trieť, česať, žať, chudnúť, žiť, pracovať*, as well as the irregular verbs *byť, chcieť, ísť, stať sa*: *chytajúc, volajúc, dajúc, rozumejúc, černejúc sa, nesúc, kladúc, hynúc, minúc, berúc, orúc, češúc, prijímúc, vezmúc, chudnúc, žujúc, obujúc sa, pracujúc, súc, chcejúc, idúc*.

The suffix of the gerund *-úc* is shortened when following the long syllable: *skáčuc, píšuc, môžuc, zdriemnuć sí, zájduc, nájduc, zíduc sa...*

The suffix *-iac/-ac* is used to form the gerund of the regular verbs of the paradigms *robiť, vidieť, kričať* and the regular verbs *jesť, vedieť, stáť*. Examples: *robiac, nosiac, kosiac, zvíťaziac, vidiac, hľadiac, sediac, bežiac, spiac, jediac, povediac, stojac, postojac...*

The diphthong *-ia-* is not shortened when following a long syllable: *krútiac, túžiac, pýšiac sa...*

The gerund is used only in formal language. In colloquial speech the gerund is not used at all; similarly formed words with an adverbial function are used instead of the gerund: *idúci, pískajúci, plačúci, stojaci...* or *idúcky, ležiačky...* These forms are used less frequently in formal language.

### The Passive Forms

The analytical form of the passive gerund was used in the old standard language. It was formed from the gerund of the auxiliary verb *byť* and the past participle of the autonomous verb. These forms were characteristic of imperfective as well as perfective verbs of action. E.g. *súc volaný, súc volený, súc potrestaný*.

## The Participle

### The Active Present Participle

The active present participle is the non-finite verb form obtained from the second form of the present stem of the imperfective verbs by the suffixes *-úci* (*-úca*, *-úce*) or *-iaci* (*-iaca*, *-iace*), *-aci* (*-aca*, *-ace*).

The active present participle is formed from all imperfective verbs, both autonomous and auxiliary. But its form is practically not used with the linking-verbs *byť*, *bývať*; *stať sa*, *stávať sa*, *ostávať*, *zostať*, *zostávať*, nor in the modal verbs as *smieť*, *môcť*, *musieť*.

By means of the suffix *-úci* (*-úca*, *-úce*) we form the active present participle from regular verbs of the paradigm *chytať*, *rozumieť*, *niešť*, *hynúť*, *trieť*, *brať*, *česať*, *žať*, *chudnúť*, *žiť*, *pracovať*, as well as from the irregular verbs *byť*, *chcieť*, *ísť*. Examples: *chytajúci*, -a, -e, *volajúci*, -a, -e, *rozumejúci*, -a, -e, *nesúci*, -a, -e, *hynúci*, -a, -e, *trúci*, -a, -e, *berúci*, -a, -e, *česúci*, -a, -e, *chudnúci*, -a, -e, *žijúci*, -a, -e, *pracujúci*, -a, -e, *súci*, -a, -e, *chcejúci*, -a, -e, *idúci*, -a, -e.

The long vowel in the suffix *-úci* is not shortened when following a long syllable, e.g. *píšúci*, *šľiapúci*, *viažúci*, *klžúci sa*.

By means of the suffix *-iaci* (*-iaca*, *-iace*), *-aci* (*-aca*, *-ace*) we form the active present participle from regular imperfective verbs of the paradigm *robiť*, *vidieť*, *kričať*, as well as from the irregular verbs *jesť*, *vedieť*, *stáť*, *báť sa*. Examples: *robiaci*, -a, -e, *kričiaci*, -a, -e, *hovoriaci*, -a, -e, *vidiaci*, -a, -e, *sediaci*, -a, -e, *jediaci*, -a, -e.

Active present participles have the forms of adjectives. They are declined on the "soft" adjectival paradigm "cudzi", but the case endings of the participles as *padajúci*, -a, -e or *prosiaci*, -a, -e are always short.

### The Active Past Participle

The active past participle is obtained from the infinitive stem of the perfective verbs with the aid of the suffix *-vší* (*-všia*, *-všie*). It is derived only from verbs whose infinitive stems end either in a vowel or a diphthong. They are the regular verbs of the paradigms *padať*, *rozumieť*, *hynúť*, *trieť*, *brať*, *česať*, *žať*, *chudnúť*, *žiť*, *pracovať*, *vidieť*, *kričať*, as well as the derivations from the irregular verbs: *vedieť*, *stať sa*, *stáť*.

Examples: *nachytavší*, -ia, -ie, *zavolavší*, -ia, -ie, *porozumevší*, -ia, -ie, *minuvší*, -ia, -ie, *spomenuvší*, -ia, -ie, *postlavší*, -ia, -ie, *napísavší*, -ia, -ie, *ukázavší*, -ia, -ie, *začavší*, -ia, -ie, *vzavší*, -ia, -ie, *doživší sa*, -ia, -ie, *prispevší*, -ia, -ie, *prenocovavší*, -ia, -ie, *prehovorivší*, -ia, -ie, *dostavší*, -ia, -ie.

At present the active past participle is formed only from perfective verbs. But in the past it was formed also from imperfective verbs. They were the forms *byvší*, -ia, -ie, *sedevší*, -ia, -ie, *chodivší*, -ia, -ie, *panovavší*, -ia, -ie, *písavší*, -ia, -ie...

## The Passive Participle

The passive participle is the simple non-finite verb form derived from the verb stem either by means of the suffix *-ný* (*-ná, -né, -ní*) or by the suffix *-tý* (*-tá, -té, -tí*) or by the suffix *-ený* (*-ená, -ené, -ení*). Their usage depends on the type of the verb.

1. The passive participle is not formed in the imperfective impersonal verbs. They are e.g. *pršať, snežiť, mrznúť, blýskať sa, hrmiť, smädiť, oziabať, hnevať, bolieť*.

2. The passive participle is usually not derived from reflexive verbs, e.g. the reflexive forms of the imperfective verbs as *umývať sa*.

Similarly, the passive participle is not formed from the imperfective verbs of motion, as *plaziť sa, plaviť sa, niesť sa, hýbať sa, skláňať sa...*

The suffix *-ený* (*-ená, -ené*) is used to form the passive participle from verbs of the paradigms *niešť, robiť, jesť, ísť*. Examples: *nesený, -á, -é, pečený, -á, -é, farbený, -á, -é, vychodený, -á, -é, ničený, -á, -é, živený, -á, -é, najedený, -á, -é, zájdený, -á, -é, prejdený, -á, -é...*

The suffix *-ný* (*-ná, -né*) is used to form the passive participle from verbs of the paradigms *chytať, rozumieť, trieť, brať, česať, pracovať, vidieť, kričať, vedieť, chcieť*.

The passive participle of the verb *chcieť* is formed with the suffix *-ný*: *chcený, -á, -é*.

The suffix *-tý* (*-tá, -té*) is used to form the passive participle from verbs of the paradigms *hynúť, chudnúť, žuť, stáť*.

## The Verbal Noun

The verbal noun is formed from the base of the passive participle by the suffix *-ie*: *chytan-ý* → *chytan-ie*, *prosen-ý* → *prosen-ie*, *kupovan-ý* → *kupovan-ie*, *stát-y* → *stát-ie...*

The verbal nouns are declined according to the paradigm “*vysvedčenie*” and therefore the rhythmical rule does not hold when the case endings follow a long syllable.

## ADVERBS

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Adverbs are non-inflectional autonomous words expressing the circumstances of action, particularly of verbal action.

Adverbs are divided into determinative and qualitative.

The determinative adverbs express:

a) the place of the action: *hore* (up), *blízko* (near), *ďaleko* (far), *vysoko* (high), *sprava* (from the right), *dnu* (inside), *von* (outside), *zdola* (from below), *dopredu* (forwards),

b) the time of the action: *teraz* (now), *dnes* (today), *zajtra* (tomorrow), *včera*

(yesterday), *vždy* (always), *zriedka* (rarely), *odrazu* (in one time), *zrazu* (suddenly), *včas* (in time),

c) the cause of the action: *preto* (therefore), *zato* (therefore), *nato* (for that).

The qualitative adverbs express:

a) the manner in which the action is performed: *dobre* (well), *zle* (badly), *krásne* (beautifully), *rýchlo* (quickly), *ťažko* (hard), *ticho* (silently), *darmo* (in vain), *nahlas* (loudly),

b) the degree of the action: *mnoho* (much), *málo* (little), *veľmi* (very), *celkom* (quite), *skoro* (early), *trošku* (a little), *hodne* (much), *práve* (just), *temer* (almost), *sotva* (hardly), *dosť* (enough), etc.

Adverbs in a sentence usually express:

a) an adverbial modifier of verbs: *Pracoval rýchlo* (He worked fast);

b) an adverbial modifier of adjectives: *Program bol veľmi pekný* (The programme was very good);

c) a postmodifier of nouns: *odchod domov* (the departure for home);

d) adverbs of measure in connection with nouns express quantity or number. E.g. *veľa ľudí* (many people), *málo peňazí* (little money), *toľko chlapcov* (so many boys).

## PRONOMINAL ADVERBS

Pronominal adverbs do not have any concrete meaning in themselves. As pronouns they point to the situation. They indicate the external qualities of actions.

a) The meaning of place is implied in the following adverbs: *kde* (where), *tu* (here), *tam* (there), *sem* (here – motion), *všade* (everywhere), *nikde* (nowhere), *kam* (where), *ta* (there – motion), *kade* (which way), *tade* (that way), *skade* (where from), *stade* (from there), *odkiaľ* (where from), *odtiaľ* (from there).

b) The meaning of time is implied in the adverbs: *kedy* (when), *vtedy* (at that time), *vždy* (always), *hneď* (at once), *odkedy* (since when), *dovtedy* (until that time), *inokedy* (another time), etc.

c) The meaning of cause is implied in the adverbs: *prečo* (why), *preto* (therefore), *načo* (what for), *nato* (for that).

d) The meaning of measure is to be found in the adverbs: *koľko* (how many), *toľko* (so many), *za koľko* (for how much), *za toľko* (for so much).

Pronominal adverbs, as other pronominal nouns, also have the emphasized indefinite forms. These are formed by adding particles before or after the pronouns.

The particle *ni-* is negative: *nikde* (nowhere), *nikdy* (never), *nijako* (by no means).

By means of the particle *-to*, *-že* the meaning is emphasized: *tuto* (here), *tamto* (there), *kdeže* (where), *akože* (how), *prečože* (why).

Other particles help to form the following indefinite pronominal adverbs:

*nie-*, *ne-*: *niekde* (somewhere), *niekedy* (sometimes), *nejako* (somehow), *niekoľko* (several),

*da-*: *dakde* (somewhere), *dakedy* (sometimes),

*bár-*, *bárs-*: *bárkde* (anywhere), *bárkedy* (any time), *bársako* (anyhow),

*málo-*: *málokde* (hardly anywhere), *málokedy* (rarely),

*hoc-*, *hoci-* : *hocikde* (anywhere), *hocikedy* (whenever), *hocijako* (anyhow),  
*voľa-* : *voľakde* (somewhere), *voľakedy* (sometimes), *voľajako* (somehow),  
*všeli-* : *všelijako* (in various ways), *všeličo* (all sorts of things), *všelikde* (in all sorts  
of places),  
*leda-* : *ledajako* (in any way),  
*bohvie-* : *bohviekde* (who knows where), *bohviekedy* (who knows when),  
*bohvieako* (who knows how),  
*-si* : *kdesi* (somewhere), *kedysi* (sometimes), *akosi* (somehow),  
*-kofvek* : *kdekofvek* (anywhere), *kedykofvek* (whenever).

## NUMERAL ADVERBS

Numeral adverbs are formed from numerals in similar way as other adverbs : *dvojito*, *trojito*, *dvojmo*, *trojmo*, *dvojnásobne*, *trojnásobne*, *jednako*, *dvojako*, *trojako*, etc. The multiplicative numerals *dvakrát*, *trikrát*, *desaťkrát*, etc. are also adverbial expressions.

The non-inflectional forms of the cardinal and group numerals *päť*, *desať*, *dvoje*, *štvoro* also have an adverbial character. The counted object used with them is in the genitive as it is also with adverbs of quantity.

The indefinite numerals *mnoho*, *málo*, *trocha*, *moc*, etc. are also adverbs of quantity.

On the other hand, the expressions *koľko*, *toľko*, *nakoľko*, *natoľko* are pronominal adverbs of quantity.

## FORMATION OF ADVERBS

Adverbs may be formed in several ways.

The suffix *-o* is added to stems ending in *k*, *g*, *ch*, *h* : *nízko* (low), *vysoko* (high), *ďaleko* (far), *fahko* (easily), *mnoho* (much), *tuho* (stiffly).

The suffix *-o* can also be used after some other consonants : *slabo* (weakly), *hrubo* (thickly), *tmavo* (darkly), *slepo* (blindly), *husto* (densely), *čisto* (clearly), *skoro* (early), *ostro* (sharply), *málo* (little), *dávno* (long ago), etc.

Some of these adverbs are also used as neuter nouns, e.g. *ticho* (silence), *dobro* (good), *zlo* (badness), *krásno* (loveliness), *prázdn*o (emptiness).

Some are used in the petrified prepositional genitive with the ending *-a* or in other prepositional cases : *za vidna* (when one can see), *od malička* (since childhood), *za mlada* (during youth), *do ďaleka* (into the distance), *za živa* (alive). These are adverbial expressions, but the prepositions are written separately.

Some adverbs ending in *-o*, e.g. *slobodno*, *hodno*, *vidno*, *možno*, *jasno*, *smutno*, *teplo* are used in sentences :

a) as the base of the one-element sentence : *Bolo vidno nové mesto* (The new town could be seen), *Vtedy bolo veľmi chladno* (It was very cold then) ;

b) as modal words : *Možno ho už nikdy neuvidím* (I may not see him anymore).

Adverbs can also be formed by means of the suffix *-e*: *pekne* (nicely), *dobre* (well), *zle* (badly), *presne* (accurately), *bezpečne* (safely), *obyčajne* (usually), *istotne* (surely), *tajne* (secretly), *konečne* (at last), *minule* (in the past), etc.

In many cases both the ending *-o* and *-e* can be found: *rýchlo* – *rýchle*, *isto* – *iste*.

Some adverbs of manner are formed by means of the suffix *-y*: *pomaly* (slowly), *ležiacky* (lying), *priateľsky* (in a friendly manner), *sediačky* (sitting), *slovensky* (in Slovak), *vedecky* (scientifically), etc.

Some adverbs have their origin in non-prepositional cases. In the course of time such words have petrified and have become adverbs. Examples: *dnes* (today), *hore* (up), *dolu* (down), *kus*, *kúsok* (a piece), *doma* (at home), *dnu* (inside), *veľa* (many), *celkom* (quite), *prv* (earlier), *ráno* (in the morning), *večer* (in the evening), etc. Here are included the nouns *zima* (cold) and *tma* (dark) if they have the adverbial function.

Many adverbs are petrified prepositional cases. These adverbs are called adverbial constructions and they are usually written as one word: *naľavo* (on the left), *zlava* (from the left), *doprava* (to the right), *zdola* (from below), *zhora* (from above), *zďaleka* (from afar), *okolo* (around), *nahlas* (loudly), *včas* (in time), *potom* (then), *predpoludním* (in the morning), *popoludní* (in the afternoon), etc.

The adverbs *zajtra* (tomorrow), *vlani* (last year), *osve* (separately), also belong here.

Some petrified verb forms as well as the present participles are also considered as adverbs. They end in *-mo*: *ležmo* (lying), *stojmo* (standing), *kradmo* (furtively), *rozkročmo* (astraddle).

## DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

The meaning of adverbs like that of adjectives can be intensified or diminished.

1. The meaning of adverbs may be compared absolutely:

a) by means of the prefixes: *pridobre* (too well), *prekrásne* (beautifully), *priveľa* (too much), *pričasto* (too often);

b) by the analytical forms of the intensifying adverbs: *veľmi dobre* (very well), *neobyčajne draho* (extremely expensively);

c) by repeating the same adverb in other form: *sväto-sväte* (sacrosanctly), *z čista-jasna* (suddenly).

2. In the relative comparison we distinguish three degrees: positive, comparative, superlative. Thus are compared only the adverbs derived from the qualitative adjectives.

The positive may end in *-o*, *-e*, *-y*: *vysoke*, *teple*, *pomaly*, *pekne*.

The comparative is formed from the stem by the addition of the ending *-šie* or *-ejšie*: *teplejšie*, *vyššie*, *dôraznejšie*, *priateľskejšie*.

The superlative is formed from the comparative by the addition of the prefix *naj-*: *najvyššie*, *najkrajšie*, *najbohatšie*, *najkratšie*.

The following adverbs are compared irregularly: *mnoho* – *viac* – *najviac*, *málo* – *menej* – *najmenej*, *dobre* – *lepšie* – *najlepšie*.

# PREPOSITIONS

## MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Prepositions are non-inflectional, auxiliary grammatical words expressing the relations of circumstances and objective relations in connection with the cases. The meaning of prepositions is general, they express only relations between the sentence elements. Therefore, they are called auxiliary words.

Prepositions are always used in connection with the cases of nouns, adjectives, pronouns or numerals. The connection with the case is called the prepositional case or the prepositional phrase, e.g. *na dome* (on the house), *na stole* (on the table), *do práce* (to work), *z mesta* (from the town). The preposition with the case is a single sentence element.

According to their origin prepositions are divided into primary and secondary.

The primary prepositions: *bez* (without), *do* (into), *cez* (through), *k* (to), *na* (on), *nad* (over), *o* (about), *od* (from), *pre* (for), *pri* (by), *po* (after), *s* (with), *u* (at), *v* (in), *z* (from), *okrem* (besides), *skrz* (through), *proti* (against), *pred* (before), *pod* (under), *medzi* (between), *za* (behind).

The secondary prepositions, according to their origin, are adverbs or prepositional cases, used in the function of prepositions. They may also have the meaning of adverbs or nouns in themselves: *hore* (up), *dolu* (down), *mimo* (beside), *naproti*, *oproti* (opposite), *okolo* (around), *vyše* (over), *nize* (below), *blízko* (near), *kvôli* (because of), *miesto* (instead of), *počas* (during), *včas* (in time), *prostredníctvom* (by means of), etc.

Some prepositions are composed of two or three primary prepositions or of primary and secondary prepositions: *ponad* (over), *popod* (under), *spod* (from under), *sponad* (from above), *poza* (behind), *spoza* (from behind), *spod* (from under), *uprostred* (among), *namiesto* (instead of), *pomedzi* (among), *spomedzi* (from among), etc.

The prepositions *s*, *z*, *v*, *k* have also the vocalized forms (i.e. with an added vowel) *so*, *zo*, *vo*, *ku* used only when the following word begins with the same or a similar consonant or when the non-vocalized preposition would be difficult to pronounce, e.g. *so sestrou*, *vo vlaku*, *zo zeme*, *ku komu*, *vo vode*.

The vocalized forms are always used with the forms of the pronoun *ja*: *ku mne*, *zo mňa*, *vo mne*, *so mnou*... Vocalized forms are also to be found with the prepositions: *od*, *nad*, *pod*, *pred*, *bez*, *cez*: *odo mňa*, *nado mňa*, *podo mňa*, *predo mnou*, *bezo mňa*, *cezo mňa*.

The prepositions *ceze*, *pode*, *prede*, *nade* are written together with the accusative of the pronouns of the 3rd person: *cezeň*, *podeň*, *predeň*, *nadeň*.

Prepositions can be connected with all the cases except the nominative. Some can combine with one case only, some with two and one with three cases.

The following prepositions are connected with one case:

- a) with the genitive: *bez*, *do*, *od*, *u*, *z*, *spod*, *sponad*, *okrem*,
- b) with the dative: *k*, *proti*,



- c) with the accusative: *cez, pre, skrz,*
- d) with the locative: *pri,*
- e) with the instrumental: *s.*

The following prepositions are connected with two cases :

- a) with the locative and accusative: *na, po, v, o,*
- b) with the instrumental and accusative: *nad, pred, pod, medzi.*

The preposition *za* can be connected with three cases: with the genitive, accusative and instrumental.

The secondary prepositions are mostly connected with the genitive case: *vedľa, povedľa, blízko, ďaleko, miesto, namiesto, nižšie, vyššie, ponížšie, povyššie, pozdĺž, počas, mimo, okolo,* etc.

Only some secondary prepositions are connected with the dative: *kvôli, napriek, voči.* The prepositions *hore, dolu* are connected with the instrumental.

## THE PLACE OF PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions precede the nouns with which they form prepositional phrases: *na stole, v dome.* If the noun is premodified by an attribute, the preposition precedes the whole noun phrase: *na nočnom stolíku, v malom hrnci.*

We cannot place a prepositional phrase between a preposition and a noun: Wrong: *Pozeral na pri dome stojaceho človeka.* – Right: *Pozeral na človeka stojaceho pri dome.* (He was looking at a man standing near the house.)

## Contraction of Constructions

The tendency to economize an expression results in a cumulation of prepositions, requiring different cases, the noun being usually in the case required by the immediately preceding preposition, e.g. *Hľadal to na a pod stolom.* Such cumulation is not considered correct, because one of the prepositions would be connected with an unsuitable case here. The above sentence should be connected as follows: *Hľadal to na stole i pod stolom.* (He was looking for it on and under the table.)

## SYNOPSIS OF PREPOSITIONS

PREPOSITION	GOVERNING	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
<i>bez(o)</i>	G.	without	<i>Bez matky, bez peňazí</i>
<i>blízko</i>	G.	near, next to	<i>Blízko okna, blízko teba</i>

PREPOSITION	GOVERNING	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
cez	A.	across via through	Cez Dunaj Cez Brno Cez okno
do	G.	to, into till within	Do mesta, do izby Do večera Do týždňa
doprostred	G.	in the middle. in the centre	Doprostred stola
k(u)	D.	to, toward	K tebe, k sestre, k mostu
kvôli	D.	because of, on account of	Kvôli tebe
medzi	A., I.	between  among	Medzi teba a sestru, medzi oknom a dverami Medzi ľuďi; medzi ľuďmi
mimo	G.	beside	Stáť mimo domu
miesto	G.	instead of	Miesto vás to urobím
na	A., L.	on (surface) (play) on in, to (office, institution) to, for (purpose) for (how long) for (when) (with the adjectives) (so as to achieve, have) in (environment) in (time) (with the verbs)	Na stôl Hrať na husliach Na pošte, na fakulte  Na vychádzku, na koncert Listok na autobus Na tri dni  Na nedelu  Bohatý na skúsenosti  Na pamiatku, na zdravie  Na vzduchu, na slnku Na Vianoce, na jeseň Odpovedať na, hnevať sa na
nad(o)	A., I.	over, above	Nad stôl, nad nami
okolo	G.	round around	Okolo stola Okolo siestej
po	L., A.	after on, along	Po vojne Po rieke, po mori

PREPOSITION	GOVERNING	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
po	L., A.	up and down up, down all over after (successive order) by (distribution) for (purpose) up to	Po ulici Po schodoch Po Slovensku (cestovať) Jeden po druhom  Po dve koruny Po lekára Až po Tatry
napriek	D.	in spite of	Napriek prekážkam
o	A., L.	(with the verbs – object of care or interest) (with the verbs – subject, theme, matter of speaking, thinking) at (in telling time)	Starat sa o, báť sa o  Premýšľať o, písať o  O desiatej
pod(o)	A., I.	under, below	Pod nulou, pod nulou
naproti	D.	opposite	Naproti tebe
od(o)	G.	from from (time) since (time) by (author)	Odo mňa Od pondelka Od januára Od Kukučína (poviedka)
podľa	G.	according to, by	Podľa rukopisu
pomimo	G.	past, by	Íst pomimo školy
pomocou	G.	by means of, with	Pomocou slovníka
pozdĺž	G.	along	Pozdĺž trate
pre	A.	for (benefit, detriment) because of	Pre teba Pre zlé počasie
pred(o)	A., I.	in front of, before before	Prísť pred bránu  Pred vojnou

PREPOSITION	GOVERNING	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
pri	L.	close to, with (when...) close to (at)	Pri tebe  Pri chorobe Pri okne
oproti, naproti	D.	against opposite compared with	Proti dažďu Naproti sebe Ona oproti nemu je...
s(o)	I.	together, along with "containing"	S ním  Čaj s citrónom
u	G.	at, with	U brata
uprostred	G.	in the centre in the middle (time)	Uprostred mesta Uprostred mesiaca
v(o)	L., A.	in, at in (time) on, at (name of a day or hour)	V skrini V lete V stredu
vedľa	G.	beside	Vedľa školy
vnútri	G.	in	Vnútri lietadla
voči	D.	towards	Voči matke
vzhľadom na	A.	with regard to, in view of, owing to	Vzhľadom na teba
vyše	G.	longer than, over	Vyššie hodiny
z(o)	G.	from (place, origin) (made of)	Z Viedne Z dreva
za	G., A., I.	in for (value) during, within, in the course of during, in the course of (action) behind	Raz za dva dni Za korunu Za celý večer  Za pekných večerov  Za stôl, za stolom

# CONJUNCTIONS

## MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Conjunctions are non-inflectional auxiliary grammatical words that join together sentences, clauses, phrases or words. They have not the function of independent sentence elements, they only express the relations between sentence elements or the sentences themselves.

Conjunctions are divided into co-ordinating and subordinating.

## CO-ORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Co-ordinating conjunctions express that the connected elements are equivalent, i.e. have the same value.

Co-ordinating conjunctions may have several meanings. They can be connective: *Otec a matka odcestovali včera* (Father and mother left yesterday), adversative: *Sľúbil, že príde, a neprišiel* (He promised to come but he didn't come), disjunctive: *Brat a či sestra niečo povedala* (Either brother or sister has said something), resultative: *Neučil sa, a teraz plače* (He did not learn and he is crying now), concessive: *Vie plynule čítať, a chodí iba do prvej triedy* (He can read fluently and he attends the first class only).

Co-ordinating conjunctions are divided into:

connective: *a, aj, ako aj, i, ako i, ani*. Here are also included the repetitive conjunctions *aj – aj, ani – ani* and also conjunctions of two elements:

*tak – ako, ako aj, ako, ani,*

intensifying: *aj, ba, ba aj, ba ani, a dokonca,*

adversative: *ale, lež, no, avšak, leda že,*

disjunctive: *alebo, buď, či, a či, alebo – alebo, buď – buď,*

causal: *a to, i to, veď, však, to jest,*

resultative: *a, nuž, (a) preto, (a) tak, (a) teda,*

concessive: *a, akokoľvek, aj – aj, i – i, i keby, i keď, čo i, aj tak, keby aj, i tak, hoc, hoci.*

## SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS

Subordinating conjunctions indicate that the connected elements are not grammatically equivalent. The following subordinating prepositions may introduce a dependent element:

subjective: *že, aby, keď, ako, keby, žeby,*

objective: *že, aby, ako, či, žeby,*

complemental: *že, aby, ako, žeby,*

attributive: *že, aby, ako, keď, žeby, či,*

of time: *keď, kým, ako, skôr ako, tak ako, hneď ako, až, čo, len čo, skôr než, ledva, náhle, pokiaľ, prv než, sotva,*

of manner: *ako, ani, sťa, ako keď, ako keby, akoby, s tým, že, než,*

effectual: *až, že, abv. čo, takže, tak, abv.*

causal: *pretože, le, lebo, le,*

of purpose: *aby, nech, že, žeby,*

conditional: *ak, keby, aby, pokiaľ, keď, nech.*

The conjunction usually precedes the subordinate element. It usually introduces a sentence and therefore stands at the beginning of the sentence introduced.

The origin of the conjunctions *a, i, aj, ale, alebo, lebo, bo, aby, keď, že, hoci, keby* is not clear. Some other words are also used in this function. Especially relative pronouns, adverbial pronouns or the adverbs *kde, kedy, ledva, kdekoľvek, kedykoľvek, prečo, však, síce, ako, tak, aký, kedy, ktorý, kto, čo, aký, kým, čím*. etc. These words are called connective expressions.

The concrete meaning of conjunctions does not depend on themselves but on the relations between the sentence elements or on the relations between sentences. Some conjunctions, however, have a fixed meaning: *hoci* (though), *ak* (if), *sťa* (as).

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUNCTIONS

CONJUNCTION	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
<i>a</i>	and	To je moja <i>a</i> to jeho kniha. On <i>a</i> ona.
<i>aby</i>	in order to, in order not to to (do...), not to (do...)	Nosím okuliare, <i>aby</i> som dobre videl. Vezmite si teplý kabát, <i>aby</i> vám nebolo zima. Učiteľ mi hovorí, <i>aby</i> som vravel nahlas. Povedal, <i>aby</i> sme sa nebáli.
<i>ak</i>	in case	Ak chcete veľa vedieť, musíte sa systematicky učiť.
<i>ako</i>	like, as	Robte to <i>ako</i> ja. Jeho sestra pracuje <i>ako</i> lekárka.
<i>ako keby</i>	as if	Pozeral na mňa, <i>ako keby</i> ma nebol nikdy videl.
<i>ale</i>	but	To pero je dobré, <i>ale</i> drahé.
<i>alebo</i>	or	Pôjdeš s nami na výlet, <i>alebo</i> budeš doma ?
<i>ale aj</i>	but also	V reštaurácii majú nielen teplé, <i>ale aj</i> studené nápoje.
<i>ani</i>	nor, not even	Tá miestnosť nie je <i>ani</i> veľká, <i>ani</i> malá.

CONJUNCTION	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
ani... ani	neither ... nor	Ani ja, ani môj brat nefajčíme.
bez toho, aby	without	Kúpil som to bez toho, aby som vedel, na čo to bude.
a preto	that is why, therefore	Mám dnes veľa práce, a preto nemôžem ísť s vami do kina.
a tak (teda)	that is why, therefore	Môj priateľ hovorí veľmi rýchlo, a tak (teda) mu rozumiem veľmi málo.
avšak	but	Príď, avšak nie neskoro.
až	when (with the future) until	Až bude vonku teplo, budeme chodiť plávať. Musíte študovať tak dlho, až sa to naučíte.
buď ... alebo	either ... or	Môžeme ísť buď na kúpalisko, alebo do školy.
či	if, whether	Odkáž, či prídeš.
či ... alebo	whether ... or	Musíš to urobiť, či chceš, alebo nechceš.
i	as well as	Tá kniha je pekná i lacná.
i ... i	both ... and	V reštaurácii podávajú i teplé i studené nápoje.
i keby (aj keby)	even if	Pôjdeme na prechádzku, aj keby začalo pršať.
i keď (aj keď, hoci)	though, although	Nepýtal sa, čo to znamená, i keď tomu dobre nerozumel.
keď	when	Keď som bol vlani v Bratislave, býval som v hoteli Kyjev.
	if, in case	Keď vás to bude zaujímať, môžete prísť.
keďže	because	Keďže máme ešte peniaze, môžeme si niečo kúpiť.
kým	as/so long as	Kým vládzeš, pracuj.
kým ... ne-	until	Seď tu, kým neodíde.
len čo	as soon as	Len čo som prišiel do Československa, začal som sa učiť po slovensky.
lenže	only	Príď, lenže sám.
skôr než, ako	before	Skôr ako (než) odídete, zhasnite svetlo.
než	than	Eva je staršia než ja.
nielen .... ale i	not only but also	Nielen ješť, ale i pracovať.

CONJUNCTION	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLES
odvtedy čo ( ako)	since	Už rok uplynul odvtedy, čo som vás naposledy videl.
pretože	for	Musíme stavať nové elektrárne, pretože náš priemysel potrebuje veľa elektrickej energie.
pretože	since	Musíme už ísť, pretože je už dosť neskoro.
síce, ... ale	it's true that ... but	Ten dom je síce malý, ale je pekný.
tak ... ako	both ... and	Pre tento prípad je závažné tak jedno, ako aj druhé.
teda	that is why, therefore	Už je koniec semestra, musíme teda študovať.
však (avšak)	but	Hľadal som ju, nebola však doma.
zatiaľ čo	while	Zatiaľ čo profesor vysvetľoval, študenti si robili poznámky.
že	that	Som veľmi rád, že ste prišli.

## PARTICLES

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Particles are auxiliary words by means of which nuances in the meaning of utterances or of individual expressions are expressed with regard to a situation or context. Particles add emotional nuances to modal sentences, e.g. interrogative ones.

When classifying particles we consider their lexical as well as their syntactic meaning. Some of them have a wide extent and a vague content, others, specific ones, have narrow extent and a rich content. The semantics and the starting-point in their classification are indicated by the order of the particles. If there are more particles used one after another, they are arranged according to their extent and content. The particles with a more general meaning are placed farther from, whereas those with a more concrete meaning are placed closer to the word modified.

Particles, according to their meaning, can be divided into two groups: introductory and intensifying.

Introductory particles are close to conjunctions, the intensifying ones are usually closer to the adverbs.

1. Introductory particles are divided into:

- a) connective (*a, ale, len, no, nuž, potom, prosím, síce*),
- b) incentive (*aby, azda, bár, bodaj, by, čiže, čoby, nech, nože, pravda, predsa, vari, bohďaj, všakhej, všakver*).



Connective particles have a broad meaning and a vague content. Incentive particles have a narrower extent but a richer content.

2. Intensifying particles express the nuances in meaning with regard to the speaker who points to the substantial part of the sentence, most often to the rheme. They cannot be arbitrarily varied in a sentence, because of their relatively precise content (some introductory particles can be exchanged and the meaning remains practically the same).

Intensifying particles are divided into

a) explanatory (*ako, aspoň, beztoho, menovite, nadovšetko, predsa, prosím, slovom, teda, takto*),

b) evaluative (*aby, alebo, bezpochyby, bištu, božechráň, bohuchovaj, bohužiaľ, čajsi, podobne, môžu byť, ledva, nedajbože, pravdepodobne, pravdaže, priam, správne, takmer, skutočne, sotva, vskutku*),

c) emphatic (*iba, len, aj, ani, aspoň, často, doslova, jedine, just, predovšetkým*).

Explanatory particles give a new meaning to the context. They are similar in meaning to the connective and introductory ones. Evaluative particles qualify the content of an expression or an utterance, expressing thus a positive or negative attitude of the speaker to the utterance.

The meaning of these particles is approximately the same as that of the particles *áno – nie*. The expressions *áno – nie*, in their respective function of affirmation – negation, are the most neutral in their impact. Instead of *áno*, the particles *ba, bezpečne, naozaj, samozrejme, veru, pravdaže* can be used and instead of *nie*, we can use *aba, bohužiaľ, figu, žiaľ, sotva*, etc.

Emphatic particles stress an expression, underline its importance.

Particles are polysemic and therefore some of them can be included in more groups.

Particles may introduce separate expressions or whole utterances (sentences, simple, complex or compound).

The following particles are related to the whole utterance: *Ale kedysi ho videl?* (But when did you see him?) *Veru všetci boli dojatí.* (Indeed, all were moved.)

Separate expressions may be emphasized by the following particles: *Tvoj učiteľ ti to iste vysvetlí.* (Your teacher will certainly explain it to you.) *Jeho názor akiste všetci prijali.* (His view was probably accepted by everybody.)

In addition to the independent particles mentioned so far, we also know non-autonomous particles.

Those with the character of morphemes are non-autonomous particles, e.g. *-že, ho, len, čo, čím, by, už, to*. The particle *by* is a part of the verb form, in the conditional mood (*napísal by, zvolili by ho*). The particle *-že* is written together with the word (*nechže, ešteže*). The particle *čo* is used in the constructions: *čo ako, čo keby, čo kto; deň čo deň, rok čo rok, noc čo noc, čo najlepšie*.

The morphemes forming the indefinite pronouns are also non-autonomous particles. E.g. *-si, -kofvek*, etc. The particle *ho* is used in colloquial speech. *Ideš mi ho!*

Particles have a fixed form (word-order, intonational character).

With regard to their form the particles are divided into: primary and secondary.

According to their character particles can also be divided into one-word and multiple-word particles.

Primary particles cannot be further divided into morphemes. Here are included the particles *či, i, no, že*. Then there are such particles whose derivation or composition is covert: *ani (a-ni), keby (keď-by)*. Here also belong the particles which originated as petrified grammatical forms: *hadam* (perhaps), *skratka* (in short), *figu* (fiddlesticks), *vlastne* (in fact).

Secondary particles are formed from several words. They are divided into simple expressions: *aleže, akože, čiže, horkýže (-že), bárby, čoby, kiežby (-by), čožeby, kdežeby (-že-by)*; prepositional constructions: *dokonca, vcelku* and various petrified forms: *božechráň, bohuchovaj, môžu byť, vonkoncom, žiaľbohu*.

One-word particles are the most frequent. By being repeated, some give rise to multiple-word particles: *isto-iste, koniec-koncov, nie a nie*. Here are also included the following expressions: *akože by, to jest, figu borovú* (fiddlededee), *figu drevnú* (fiddlesticks), *jedným slovom* (in a word) and some others. Many of them are fixed phraseological units.

Particles in the sentence can relate to one expression or to the whole utterance. They stand independently or they are an independent utterance. Then they most frequently act as a substitute for *áno – nie*: *Máš rád trénera? Prirodzene.* (Do you like your coach? Of course.) *Je to skvelý človek. A tysi iného názoru? Kdeže.* (He is a marvelous man. Are you of a different mind? Not at all.)

Particles usually precede the expression that they modify: *Iba otec mu verí.* (Only father believes him.)

Particles following the expression that they modify, are understood as stylistically marked. *Keď už nevie vraviť, ukazuje aspoň.* (If he can't speak, he points to things at least.)

If a particle is to introduce the whole utterance, it usually stands at its beginning: *Veď tomu všetci rozumieme.* (But we all understand it.) *Tak prečo ste nespokojní?* (So why are you not satisfied?)

## INTERJECTIONS

### MEANING AND CLASSIFICATION

Interjections are non-inflectional words expressing an internal excitement, an emotion or they imitate sounds.

From the syntactic point of view they are one-word sentences. Interjections do not enter syntactic relations. The only grammatical form of interjections is their independent intonational character.

Interjections possess a special intonation in the sentence indicated by emphasis, pause (expressed by means of commas in a text): *Jaj, to je hrozné!* (Oh, dear, it's terrible!)

Interjections cannot be divided morphologically. Their forms are fixed (some of them have their origin in other parts of speech), e.g. *á, nó, buňm*.

In interjections we find sounds or groups of sounds that are not otherwise common in standard Slovak, e.g. *hm, krík, tti*.

Interjections have no particular morphological, syntactic form.

Interjections are divided into:

1. proper interjections (*ach, jaj, bŕ, pst*),
  2. onomatopoeic words (words imitating various sounds: *čľup, kikirikí, fuk*).
- Both these groups have the same character, they differ only in their meaning.

1. Proper interjections are divided into:

- a) emotive interjections,
- b) volitional interjections.

Emotive interjections express emotions and moods. They have no communicative function, because they are not addressed to anybody. They are indefinite in their meaning, their meaning is not evident. They can express happiness as well as anger, pain or sorrow: *Ach, to je krásne*. (Oh, that's beautiful.) *Ach, to ma rozčuľuje*. (Oh, that makes me angry.) *Ach, to je smutná správa*. (Oh, that's sad news.)

Volitional interjections express the will of a speaker, they are addressed to the recipient. Their meaning is more specific. For example *hijo* is the command to an animal to start moving (gee up), *hľa* means behold!, look!

Volitional interjections are divided into two groups:

- a) alerting interjections (calling one's attention): *haló, hľa, laľa,*
- b) imperative interjections: *na, hajde, heš, čihí, hajs, hijó*.

The former call the addressee's attention to the utterance. *Aha, pozri ten obraz*. (There, see that picture.) *Hej, poďte sem*. (Hey, come here.)

The latter (imperative) interjections have the function close to that of the imperative mood in verbs; they express commands – prohibitions: *Pst!* (Hush!), *No!* (There now!)

Here are also included some greetings: *Ahoj, servus*.

2. Onomatopoeic words express the desire to imitate sounds and interpret them in speech. As a rule, they are linguistically fixed.

For example: *bác, bim-bam, cup, klop, kikirikí, čľup, tuk*.

They can also occur in pairs *bim-bam, cup-cup, tik-tak*.

According to their origin interjections may be

- a) primary – they express emotions, will directly, their sense is not related to another part of speech. These are rather frequent: *ach, fuj, uj, aha, hej, hijó, čľup*;
- b) secondary – these have their origin in other parts of speech, particularly: in verbs, as their petrified imperatives: *hybaj, pozri, hľa*, as isolated verb bases: *hop, myk, chmat*, in nouns: *beda, preboha*, in sentences: *prosím, dajsamisvete, prisámvačku, namôjveru*.

# ORTHOGRAPHY

Three general principles are applied in Slovak spelling:

- a) The phonetic principle: the same sound is always indicated by the same letter.
- b) The etymological principle: the historical origin of the word, or the etymon determines the spelling: *byť – biť, výr – vír*.
- c) The morphological principle: the spelling of the word base is used in all its forms, although the pronunciation differs: *zub [zup] – zuba, trh [trch] – z trhu*.

All these three principles are involved in Slovak spelling, but the phonetic one is the most conspicuous.

## Writing ‘i – y’

With regard to writing *i – y* which are pronounced alike, we divide the consonants into:

soft: *c, dz, j* and all those with the diacritic mark (ˇ) – “mäkčeň”,

hard: *g, h, ch, k, d, t, n,*

neutral: *b, f, l, m, p, r, s, v, z.*

## Writing ‘i – y’ in the Word Root

The rules for writing *i – y* in the root are simple but at the same time there are many exceptions. There are three basic rules that must be taken into account.

*I* always follows the soft consonants in the word root. Examples: *šit', čítanka, život, cit, prijímať, ticho [ticho], list [list], snímať [sňímať], divadlo [ďivadlo], čistota, hoci, medzi, či, ši! uži!...*

Exceptions are loan words: *Cyril, cylinder, bicykel, cyklón, cynik.*

*Y* always follows a hard consonant in the word root. It is always used after *g, h, ch, k,* and only in a limited number of words when following *d, t, n, l.* These words will be referred to as the “defined” words.

Examples of writing *y* after the hard consonants *g, h, ch, k; d, t, n, l:* *hyd, hydina, hýbať, chýr, chyža, kyslý, kydať, kýchnuť, kým, vtedy, dýka, dyňa, týždeň, motýľ, stýkať sa, štyri, lyžica, lyže, blýskať sa, mlyn, plyn, vplyv, plytký, zlyhať, lýtko, lysý.*

Exceptions are onomatopoeic words: *chichotať sa, tikať, kikirikať.*

Either *i* or *y* is written after the neutral consonants.

Y follows the neutral consonants only in a limited number of words. In other word roots *i* is written after the neutral consonants.

In general, “defined” words occur rather rarely. The words *čmýriť sa, syseľ, tryzna, varyto, smyk, vyžla, výr, byvol, pýr, pyteľ* are found very rarely in texts. On the other hand, some of these words are quite current in texts. Such are, for example: *by, aby, byť, vy, my, myslieť*.

As to frequency, these words can be divided into three groups.

The most frequent are: *by, aby, byť, bývať, my, myliť sa, myslieť, pýtať sa, rýchly, kryť, syn, vy, vysoký, nazývať*.

Less frequent are: *bystrý, byt, dobytok, nábytok, odbyt, obyčaj, mykať, umývať, mydlo, hmyz, šmýkať sa, pýcha, ryba, rýdži, rýpať, ryť, strýc, ryža, bryndza, sypať, syr, vysychať, zvyk, jazyk*.

“Defined” words very rarely used in everyday life are: *býk, byvol, Bytča, bylina, kobyla, prvobytný, mys, myš, pomyje, Myjava, mýto, smyk, čmýriť sa, hmýriť, žmýkať, pýr, pytliak, pysk, pykať, pýriť sa, kopyto, pyteľ, ryčať, ryha, rys, ryšavý, brýzgať, hrýzť, koryto, kryha, prýštiť sa, trysk, rým, rytier, sychravý, syčať, sýkorka, syseľ, vydra, vyhňa, výr, výskať, vyžla*.

## “i – y” in Suffixes

Suffixes are divided into: derivative, thematic and relational.

In Slovak *y* is used in the derivative suffixes *-yňa, -kyňa (varovkyňa, opatrovkyňa, burgyňa, svätyňa, pustýňa, kuchyňa, bohyňa ...)*. All the other derivative suffixes are written with *i* (*-iň, -izeň, -ník, -ista, -ík, -ička, -ina, -inka, -ica, -izácia, -iteľ, -isko, -ište, -ičný, -istý, -ičelý, -inký, -iteľný, -itý, -ičitý, -ičký, -isto ...*).

Thematic suffixes have only *i, í (prosiť, prosím, prosíme, sedím, sedíme ...)*.

Nouns can be of three genders: masculine, feminine, neuter. There are four basic paradigms for each of the genders:

masculine: “*chlap, hrdina, dub, stroj*”,

feminine: “*žena, ulica, dlaň, kosť*”,

neuter: “*mesto, srdce, vysvedčenie, dievča*”.

Only two of the paradigms mentioned have *y* in their relational suffixes: “*dub, žena*”. In all the other nouns (10 paradigms) we always write *i* in the relational suffixes. The instrumental ending *-ami* always takes *i*.

There are several groups of words that are declined on adjectival paradigms. They are adjectives and several pronouns (*môj, ktorý, každý ...*), numerals (*prvý, dvojnásobný ...*) and the verb forms (*čítaný, písaný ...*).

If the relational suffix is preceded by a soft consonant (if the word is declined on the paradigm “*cudzí*”) we always use *i/í*; if the relational morpheme is preceded by a hard or neutral consonant (paradigm “*pekný*”), we write *y/ý* except in the nominative plural (*pekní chlapci*).

Some special remarks on adjectives, pronouns, numerals.

In all the animal adjectives as *rybí, páví, holubí, kohútí, soví, kozí* etc. we write *i*, because they are declined on the paradigm “*cudzí*”.

Short *i* is written in the nominative plural of the paradigm “*otcov*” (*otcovi bratia*).

Some remarks relating to pronouns.

The letters *i*, *y* are written in the personal pronouns as follows:

*ti* (= tebe), *ty* (= ty sám), *mi* (= mne), *my* (= my všetci), *oni* (= tí), *ony* (= tie), the pronoun *samy* (= tie).

If pronouns contain the particles *-si* or *-to* their basic form remains unchanged: *tí – tito*, *tých – týchto*, *taký – takýto*, *takí – takíto*, *ktorý – ktorýsi*, *aký – akýsi*, *akých – akýchsi*, *akým – akými*, *takými – takými*, *akými – akými*.

We write *-y* (as in “*pekný*”) in the ordinal numerals, while *-i* is written in the cardinal numerals:

*piati chlapci*  
*piatim chlapcom*

*piaty chlapec*  
*piatym chlapcom*

The numeral *jedny* used with feminine and neuter nouns and with masculine inanimate nouns is written with *-y*.

## Writing “*s – z*”

Regardless of how *s – z* are pronounced, only the preposition *z(o)* can be used with the genitive and only the preposition *s(o)* can be used with the instrumental. For example: *z knihy*, *zo stola*, *z novín*, *z obloka*, *z úlohy*, *zo zoznamu*, *zo skúšky*, *z fajky*, *z perín*, *s knihou*, *s bratom*, *so sestrou*, *so zmenou*, *so psom*, *s priateľom*, *s matkou*, *s Vierou*.

If *s – z* occur as prefixes then *s* precedes a voiceless consonant and *z* precedes a voiced consonant: *spáliť*, *stratiť*, *schudnúť*, *zhabať*, *zbedať*, *zíšť*, *zhovárať sa*...

The prefix *vz-* is always spelled with *z* regardless of how it is pronounced: *vzchopiť sa*, *vznikať*, *vzpínať*, *vzchádzať*, *vzíšť*.

## Word Division

Words can be divided only into whole syllables. That is to say, monosyllabic words, like *smer* cannot be divided either as *s-mer*, nor as *sme-r*.

The morphological make-up of the word must also be considered: prefixes are separated at the point where they are added to the base, e.g. *vy-čkať*, *pred-ísť*, *zo-mknúť sa*, *poob-šávať*, *ne-dbať*, *po-trebný*, *pri-jem*. In words where this point is not so conspicuous, we may omit this fact. E.g. *ná-jdem* = *náj-dem*, *ná-dcha* = *nád-cha*, *roz-um* = *ro-zum*, *na-jmä* = *naj-mä*, *pri-jmy* = *prij-my*, *pro-spech* = *pros-pech*, *pô-jdem* = *pôj-dem*, *za-jtra* = *zaj-tra*.

The morphological boundary must also be taken into account inside the word which should be divided at this point: *mest-ský*, *det-ský*, *závist-li-vý*, *bás-nic-tvo*, *lesk-lý*.

Otherwise, words are divided according to the following rules:

a) if there is one consonant between two vowels, the consonant belongs to the following syllable: *ce-na, me-ra-li, ho-to-vý, te-be, Ja-no-vi, po-lo-ži-li, ne-ve-de-la*;

b) if there are more consonants between two vowels, the first one belongs to the preceding syllable, and all the others belong to the next one: *bor-ba, ov-ca, trp-ký, špen-dlik, An-glic-ko, bys-trý, ses-tra*.

## Capitalization

Capitals are used 1. with proper nouns, 2. in abbreviations, 3. at the beginning of a sentence, 4. to express respect with the 2nd person pronouns.

1. Writing capitals with proper nouns. Proper nouns are those nouns that distinguish only one individual person, place or thing. Proper nouns are names of individuals (*Eva, Jozef, Štúr*), animals (*Sivko, Dunčo*), of nations and citizens (*Slovák, Bratislavčan*), personified nouns (*Zlatovláska*), geographical names (*Mars, Afrika, Rakúsko, Prešov, Váh, Kremf*), names of holidays (*Vianoce*) and important events (*Február*), names of works of art (*Matka*), names of institutions (*Univerzita Komenského*) and of enterprises (*Zdroj*), names of groups of societies (*Spartak*) and some other names (*Preteky mieru, Rad práce*).

Certain difficulties may arise in special cases:

Proper nouns used not in the primary signification but in a derived, or special sense are not capitalized: *judáš* (instead of traitor), *xantipa* (for an ill-tempered woman).

Names of members of certain associations, of somebody's followers are written with small letter. The word *Štúrovci* indicating the family of the same surname (the Štúrs) is written with a capital, while the name of Štúr's followers and defenders of his ideas whose surnames are different, is written with a small letter – *štúrovci*. Similarly: *stachanovci, marxisti, židia* (but *Žid* written with a capital is the member of certain nation – like *Slovák*).

Names of products are written with small initial letters: *spartak, ifjušin* (an aeroplane), *bystrica* (a cigarette).

Names of institutions are written with a capital only when applied to a particular institution, e.g. *Okresný národný výbor v Banskej Bystrici*, but *náš okresný národný výbor* (in general). Or: *Základná škola v Modre* (particular), but *každá základná škola* (general).

Adjectives derived from proper nouns by means of suffixes *-ký, -ský* are written with small initial letters: *bratislavský, zvolenský*. But possessive adjectives ending in *-ov, -in*, derived from proper nouns, are written with a capital: *Bernolákov, Oľgin, Timravin*.

Compound nouns present a more complicated case.

If the geographical name consists of more than one word, it is necessary to consider whether it is used in the direct, or a metaphorical sense. If the word *pole* (field) means a real field, than the word is written with a *p*, e.g. *Nové pole* (New field). But if the word *pole* indicates a village, a section of a town, and not a field, then it is capitalized, e.g. *Španie Pole* (a village).

Let us introduce another example. The word *pleso* (lake) can indicate a lake, but also a village. If the actual lake is referred to, it is written with a *p*, *Štrbské pleso*. But the village called after the lake, is written with a capital *P*, e.g. *Štrbské Pleso*.

Here are some more examples of compound names, where the second and subsequent element is written with a small initial letter: *Dobšinská ľadová jaskyňa*, *Šafárikova ulica*, *Dukelský priesmyk*, *Botnický záliv*, *Veľtrný palác*, *Lomnický štít*, *Biely potok* (the name of a stream), *Červený most*, *Súľovské skaly*, *Pribinovo námestie*. And now, let us note compound names in which the second element is capitalized: *Biely Potok* (a village), *Červená Skala* (a village), *Červený Kameň* (a castle), *Modrý Kameň* (a town), *Trenčianske Teplice* (a town), *Divoká Orlica* (a river), *Špania Dolina* (a village), *Česká Lípa* (a town), *Staré Hory* (a village), *Liptovský Hrádok* (a village). In compound place names, all the words except prepositions and conjunctions are capitalized: *Nové Mesto nad Váhom*, *Dedina Mládeže*, *Spišská Nová Ves*, *Spišská Sobota*, *Žiar nad Hronom*, *Dolná Lehota*, *Stará Turá*, *Veľké Kapušany*, *Nová Valaská*.

2. Capitals in abbreviations. Capitals are also used in some abbreviations, e.g. *ČSSR*, *ROH*, *MNV*, *H<sub>2</sub>O*, *ČSAD*, *PhDr.*, *SLUK*.

3. Capitals are always used at the beginning of a sentence, i.e. in quotations, too. Examples: *Slávny náš Andrej Sládkovič povedal: Kto láske a kráse žije, ostane večne mladým. – Keď sa chlapci vrátili z brigády, takmer jednohlasne kričali: „Sme hladní!“*

4. Capitals are also used to express respect, in 2nd person pronouns addressing the interlocutor: *Vy*, *Váš*, *Vás*, *Vami* (in plural, as well as in singular), *Ty*, *Ti*, *Tebe*, *Tvoj*, *Tvoji*... The verbs *si*, *ste* and the pronoun *sa*, are written with small initial letters.

## Punctuation Marks

Punctuation marks are used in written utterance to express its division and the hierarchy of its various sections. Some of them help to express the nature of a sentence (question, command, exclamation, direct speech, etc.).

The following punctuation marks are used in Slovak: full stop (.), exclamation mark (!), question mark (?), comma (,), colon (:), semi-colon (;), quotation marks or inverted commas („“), dash (–), hyphen (–), suspension points (...), slants/ /and brackets ( ).

The full stop or period is used at the end of a sentence, e.g. *Uhýbal sa na všetky strany. Ak nechcete, nemusíte prísť. Neprídeme.*

Titles and inscriptions are also considered as independent sentences. However, since they can also be distinguished by different typeface or they can appear on a separate line, the full stop may be omitted. It would be superfluous here. But if a title or an inscription consists of more sentences following each other, then they have to be separated by punctuation marks.

A full stop often follows an abbreviation (*atď.*, *t. r.*, *napr.*, *a pod.*, *a i.*, *B.*



*Bystrica...*), but it is not used in symbols or abbreviations (*ČSSR, km, Ca(OH)<sub>2</sub>, KW...*).

A full stop is also used with the ordinal numerals (*12. 3. 1983, 2. 2. 1921*).

When indicating pages, chapters, sections etc. the full stop comes after the number (*2. strana, 6. paragraf, 8. kapitola*), but it is not used if the order is altered (*strana 2, paragraf 6, kapitola 8*).

An exclamation mark is used at the end of exclamatory sentences. It is usually used at the end of requests, too. Here, however, it is not necessary to use it if the request includes an imperative verb form. The exclamation mark can be repeated to emphasize a strong emotional colouring: *Beda !!, Zmizni !!!* It is always used after commands.

The question mark is used at the end of independent questions: *Kde si bol včera?* (Where were you yesterday?) When such a sentence becomes a clause in a complex sentence, the question mark is not used: *Neviem, kde bol včera.* (I don't know where he was yesterday.) But if the question is the main clause, we use the question mark at the end of the whole sentence: *Nevieš, kde bol včera?* (Don't you know where he was yesterday?)

The comma. The comma may be used either in a simple or in a complex sentence.

a) In a simple sentence it is used to separate coordinate expressions if they are not connected by the conjunctions *a, i, aj, ani, alebo*. The coordinate expressions form one sentence element. Note the examples: *Najväčšie mestá Slovenska sú Bratislava, Košice, Banská Bystrica, Nitra, Žilina a Prešov.* (The largest towns in Slovakia are Bratislava, Košice, Banská Bystrica, Nitra, Žilina and Prešov.) *Slovenčinu mávame v pondelok, v stredu i v piatok.* (We have Slovak lessons on Monday, Wednesday and also on Friday.)

Two different adverbs are not separated by a comma. *Schôdzka bude vo štvrtok v zasadačke.* (The meeting will take place in the meeting room on Thursday.)

Sometimes it is difficult to decide whether the pre-modifying elements are coordinate or subordinate with respect to each other. If we are able to distinguish them reliably, we use the comma to separate the coordinate elements, but the comma is not used between subordinate elements. Examples (for coordination): *Bol to človek zlý, zlostný a nemilosrdný.* (He was a bad, wrathful and ruthless man.) *Naše, vaše a ich knihy sme nechali zatiaľ u predavača.* (We left our, your and their books with the shop-assistant for the present.) Examples (for subordination): *Je to súčasný slovenský spisovateľ.* (He is a contemporary Slovak writer.) *Náš malý záhradný domček je skrytý medzi lipami.* (Our small garden cottage is hidden under linden trees.)

Commas set off insertions in a sentence. Insertions may be words, phrases and other sentence elements that are parenthetical and may be omitted without loss of the original meaning. Where such element is inserted, the sentence is "broken" and the insertion has to be set off with the help of commas. Let us give some examples:

*Elena, moja bývalá spolužiачka, ma prekvapila listom.* (Elena, my former schoolmate, surprised me by her letter.) *Elena, vrátiac sa zo zájazdu, ma prekvapila listom.* (Having come from the tour, Elena surprised me by her letter.) *Elena, predstav si, prekvapila ma listom.* (Imagine, Elena surprised me by a letter.) *Elena,*

*pravdaže, ma prekvapila listom.* (Elena, of course, surprised me by a letter.) *Mama, Elena ma prekvapila listom.* (Mother, Elena surprised me by a letter.) *Hľa, Elena ma prekvapila listom.* (Look, Elena surprised me by a letter.)

Commas also help to separate explanatory insertions or expressions that, under some circumstances, stand out of the sentences. For example: *Všetky ovocné stromy, jablone, hrušky, čerešne i marhule, sme ošetrili hneď na jar.* (We attended all the fruit trees, apples, pears, cherries as well as apricots, in spring.) *Sestra, tá sa nikoho nebojí.* (My sister, oh she isn't afraid of anyone.) *Ozaj, o čom si to začal hovoriť?* (By the way, what did you start to speak about?)

b) If not connected by the conjunction *a*, clauses are also separated by the comma. Let us give some examples of co-ordinate and subordinate compound sentences: *Jeden viac hovorí, druhý viac robí.* (One speaks more, the other one works more.) *Dozvedel som sa, že si včera bol na skúške.* (I learnt that you had sat for an exam yesterday.) *Nevedeli sme, že poštovné v tomto prípade platíte vy.* (We didn't know that you pay the postage in this case.)

A comma is used before the conjunction *a* if the clause introduced by it is superior with regard to the others. Then it is usually introduced by the expressions *a to, a tak, a teda, a preto*: *Oznámil som ti, že prídem, a to ti malo stačiť.* (I informed you that I should come and that ought to have been enough for you.) *Každý videl, že sa nemohli dohodnúť, a preto sme museli zasiahnuť úradne.* (Everybody saw that they hadn't been able to reach an agreement, and therefore we had to intervene officially.)

A comma must also be used when *a* is on the boundary of the inserted expressions that have to be separated by the comma. Examples: *Zbadali nás, žiaľbohu, a vyhnali.* (They noticed us, unfortunately, and expelled us.) *Celý deň len sedel, ako sme sa dozvedeli, a nič nerobil.* (As we've learnt, he was just sitting the whole day and not doing anything.)

A comma is written before the comparative conjunctions *ako* and *než* only if they introduce the whole clause. Examples: *Počíta ako maturant.* (He counts as a high-school graduate.) *Počíta tak dobre, ako keby mal matúru.* (He counts as good as if he were a high-school graduate.) *Je vyššia než jej matka.* (She is taller than her mother.) *Je vyššia, než bola jej matka.* (She is taller than her mother was.)

We do not write a comma before *alebo* and *ani* if they are used in a co-ordinative complex sentence: *Nemal otca ani matku.* (He had neither father nor mother.) *Môže prísť tvoj otec alebo matka alebo starší brat.* (Either your father or mother or elder brother may come.)

If the conjunctions *alebo*, *ani* or *a* are not co-ordinating conjunctions, a comma precedes them. For example: *Alebo budeme všetci slobodní, alebo všetci zomrieme.* (We all shall either be free or die.) *Čakal som ho, a (= ale) neprišiel.* (I was waiting for him and (= but) he didn't come.)

The colon. The colon is used to introduce a slogan, a question, direct speech and several expressions often in the way of supplementation. Examples: *Fučík končí svoju Reportáž spod šibenice slovami: „Ludia, mal som vás rád, bdejte!“* (J. Fučík finished his Reportage Written under the Gallows with the words: "People, I loved you, watch!") *Učiteľ súhlasil a povedal: „Ohybné slovné druhy sú: podstatné mená,*

*prídavné mená, zámená, číslovky a slovesá.*“ (The teacher agreed and said: “The inflecting parts of speech are: nouns, adjectives, pronouns, numerals and verbs.”)

If a joins only two elements, we do not use the colon. For example: *Slovesá sú dokonavé a nedokonavé.* (Verbs are perfective and imperfective.)

A capital letter is used after the colon when the latter is followed by direct speech or an independent sentence. If, however, the introduced sentence forms only one simple sentence with the introductory part, or if only enumeration follows the colon, we write a small initial letter. For example we write a small letter in the construction: *Skrátka a dobre: popoludní treba prísť.* But a capital letter is used in the construction: *Učiteľ povedal: „Popoludní treba prísť.“* Here we also use the quotation marks.

The semi-colon. The semi-colon is used where we could use a full stop or a comma. For example: *Dlho sme o tom rozprávali; nikdy na to nezabudnem. Dlho sme o tom rozprávali, nikdy na to nezabudnem.* Or: *Dlho sme o tom rozprávali. Nikdy na to nezabudnem.*

Quotation marks are used at the beginning and at the end of direct speech. If it is interrupted the inverted commas must be repeated. Example: *Igor hovoril: „Dobrá je to kniha, veľmi užitočná.“ „Dobrá je to kniha, veľmi užitočná,“ hovoril Igor. „Dobrá je to kniha,“ hovoril Igor, „veľmi užitočná.“*

Inverted commas are also used to indicate a strange or a quoted word in the text: Examples: *Starí rodičia sa „vyštafirovali“ ako najlepšie vedeli.*

The dash. It expresses a pause in speech. Examples: *Čakali sme kamaráta a prišiel – medveď. Mladosť – radosť.*

The dash helps to separate insertions in a sentence, as for example: *Už dva týždne – ako nás informovali na jeho pracovisku – je na cestách.* In fiction the dash may be used instead of quotation marks.

The hyphen. The dash is used in sentences and the hyphen in words. The hyphen is used a) in compound words, e.g. *žlto-čierny, bielo-modro-červený, Bratislava-Vinohrady, horko-ťažko, zle-nedobre, rusko-slovenský, Jozef Gregor-Tajovský*; b) at the end of a line to divide a polysyllabic word (end-of-line division).

Suspension points, usually three dots, indicate an unfinished or an interrupted sentence, but also an ellipsis at the beginning or inside a sentence where some words are omitted. Examples: *Keď sme sa vracali, zrazu...; ... a ústa pili sneh.* In fiction suspension points are also used to indicate pauses in speech.

The brackets are set off insertions, often extraneous to the sentence, meant to explain or add something: *Gramatické slová (predložky, spojky, častice) sú vcelku kratšie ako plnovýznamové slová. Všetky tri naše školy (základná, gymnázium i odborná) odišli na výlet do Vysokých Tatier.*

# VOCABULARY

## DIFFERENTIATION OF SLOVAK VOCABULARY FROM THE STYLISTIC POINT OF VIEW

**Neutral vocabulary.** From the vocabulary we can separate a group of words usually called neutral words. They are, for instance, such words as : *stôl, písať, zelený, dvadsať, hore*, etc.

The neutral vocabulary includes words that are stylistically neutral, and are to be found in all styles of the language. They name objects of the immediate surroundings. They are used not only in oral, but also in written communication. The neutral vocabulary includes words of the basic vocabulary, names of objects, their relationship, as e.g. *dom, lyžica, biely, čierny, písať, robiť, blízko, vysoko, päť, sto, ja, ty, on, pri, pred, ale, iba, vraj*. None of the styles of the language can do without them.

Apart from these un-marked words, we can set off a group of words typical by their stylistic characteristics. These are divided into colloquial and bookish words according to whether they are found in oral speech or in written language.

**Colloquial words.** Here are included words representing the basis of the vocabulary in colloquial, conversational and spontaneous utterances. They are called colloquialisms. Typical colloquial words are *panelák, zlepšovák, betónka, časenka, Februárka* (= ulica Februárového víťazstva), *naordinovať, oddiskutovať*.

Here we also include the so-called professionalisms from the slang of various work-places, e.g. *káblovka, štítkovať* (= robiť röntgenové snímky zo štítu), etc., then common words in a metaphorical sence, e.g. *drvíť sa*, and also loan words as *haksňa* (= noha), *troleják, šmrnc*, etc.

A certain "univerbation" i.e. reducing two or several neutral elements into a single word is typical of colloquial language, e.g. *kandidátka* (kandidátska listina), *litrovka* (litrová fľaša), *plenárka* (plenárna schôdza). The substantivization of adjectives is also typical of colloquial speech. E.g. *vedúci* (vedúci závodu), *hostinská, čierne* (pivo), *čierna* (káva). Their meaning can only be understood from the context.

The group of colloquial words includes the expressive words, e.g. *starký, starká, zlatko*, hypocoristic names, such as *ujko, dedko, strýčko*, children's words *papať, hajať, hačnúť*, the augmentative words *psisko, babisko*, the vulgar words *zdochnúť, žranica*, etc.

The group of colloquial words includes the old-fashioned words *pakeľ* (balík), *plajbas* (ceruza), *pomerkovať* (dať pozor na niekoho), *kunšaft* (zákazník), *egzecírka* (vojenské cvičenie), *industriálka* (priemyselná škola). The youngest generation usually does not understand the meaning of these words.

Interjections, particles, metaphorical words and expressions are often used in colloquial speech. For example: *joj, veď, vari, má dlhé vedenie*, etc.

**Bookish words.** Colloquial words can be described as typical of familiar utterances and they form the basic means to such speech. But bookish words are not connected to any style and they do not act as the basic, neutral ones.

Bookish words include names occurring especially in the written language, but this does not mean that they may not appear in colloquial speech as well. If used intentionally, they may produce a comic effect.

The bookish character is to be seen in loan words that also have their Slovak equivalents, e.g. *denacionalizácia* (odnárodňovanie), *egalita* (rovnosť), *historikum* (historická vec), *politikum* (politická vec), *sumácia* (súhrn), *centenárrium* (storočie), *paganizmus* (pohanstvo).

Slovak vocabulary also has some words that may be considered as bookish, compared to their colloquial equivalents, e.g. *silný* (mocný), *mnoho* (moc), etc.

**Terms.** A term is the name of a precise concept peculiar to one or several fields of science, art, profession, etc., for example, the linguistic terms *morféma*, *prefix*, the mathematical terms *integrál*, *diferenciál*. Multiplicity of meaning is characteristic of common words. For example, the words *hlava*, *koleno*, *nos* have several meanings. A polysemantic character of terms within one branch of science is considered as a disadvantage. In many branches of science, however, synonyms can still be terms. They are called doublets. Such are, for example, *lingvistika – jazykoveda*, *geografia – zemepis*, *botanika – rastlinopis*.

Unambiguity and precision in terminology is achieved by explaining the content of a term. This is called a definition. Definition indicates the semantic borders, the content and extent of a term.

New terms may originate in various ways. Terms of the same concept category are formed with the aid of the same or similar word-building formants. Names of tools are formed by means of the suffix *-č*: *triedič*, *vyorávač*, *klasňovač*, etc.

The terms can also be formed by combining the bases of two words, e.g. *železobetón*, *zemepis*, *románopisec*. If the words are connected syntactically associated expressions are formed. For example: *vysoký tlak*, *kyselina sírová*, *dialektický materializmus*.

Terminology is also enriched by taking over lexical units from foreign languages. Loan terms are usually taken over from various living languages, or they are formed from Greek or Latin roots as international terms. The sports terms, e.g. *gól*, *ofsajd*, *futbal*, *aut*, are taken from English, the musical terms *forte*, *piano*, *andante*, from Italian, the words *bujón*, *želé*, from French. International terms of Greek and Latin origin are e.g. *automobil*, *motor*, *atóm*.

Several terms are formed from the Slovak word-stock but their formation is derived by translation from a foreign or an international term. They are called loan translations. For example: *milosrdenstvo* (misericordia), *podvýživa* (Unternährung), *životopis* (biography), *zemepis* (geography).

Technical terms have no emotional meaning. Therefore, the terms *integrál*, *sínus*, *kosínus* can hardly be used as expressive words. The cases when these terms are used in an ironic sense, are considered as exceptions.

The demand for motivation in terms is fulfilled when the term obviously indicates the concept or the content by its form. Motivation is obvious in the terms *zámeno*, *vodovod*, *vodomet*, *vlečný voz*, especially if compared with the non-motivated words *veta*, *fréza*, *olej*, *lieh*, etc.

As to their structure, technical terms are divided into one-word terms, e.g. *častica*, *cislíca*, *veta*, *podmet*, *renta*, *anoda*, *katoda*, *zakladna*, *nadstavba*, and multi-word or associated terms, e.g. *hlboká orba*, *vysoká pec*, *dialektický a historický materializmus*, *kysličník uhľičitý*, *stupnica tvrdosti*, *postavenie mimo hry*.

## Stylistic Usage of Neutral, Colloquial, Bookish Vocabulary and Terminology

The group of bookish words includes also words of the **official language**. Words must make the administrative style clear and precise. Words for official rules or laws, enactments, promulgations, etc. are typical of this group. E.g. *lehota*, *položka*, *penále*, etc.

Some of them have the character of typical terms, e.g. *oznámenie*, *splnomocnenie*, *odvolanie*, *úrok*. Some others have the character of colloquial words, e.g. *časenka*, *hlásenka*, *nahlásiť*, *skladovať*, *naplánovať*.

**Socio-political words.** They name phenomena from the socio-political life, e.g. *kampaň*, *demonštrácia*, *blokáda*, *opozícia*, *veľmoc*, *oficiálny*, *informácie*, *rozvojový*, etc.

They are typical of the socio-political style.

**Poetic words.** Words usually used in poetry, sometimes also in prose, form a group of words called poetic words. Such are, for example, *vesna*, *luna*, *blik*, *niva*, *tieseň*, *postáť*, *žertva*, *kradmý*, *jarý*, *čarovný*, *zlovestný*, *ktos'*, *čos'*, *kdes'*, *priam*, *by* (= *aby*), etc. If used in another situation, they are felt as improper, archaic words.

By far the largest number of poetic words are of Slovak origin. For example, *žas* (*úžas*), *zvukot* (*zvonivý zvuk*). They usually have synonymous equivalents. For example *luna* – *mesiac*, *žertva* – *obeť*, etc. Folk expressive words can be distinguished in the poetic vocabulary, e.g. *bujný*, *statný*. Further, we can distinguish here bookish words that are to be found especially in official speeches, e.g. *posol* (*jarí*), *zvestovač* (*jarí*), and then words adding a lyrical character to the speech, e.g. *čarovný*, *opojný*, *prelestný*, *čaro*, etc.

**Biblical words** with their properties are close to bookish and poetic words. They are to be found in religious texts and speeches. Such are, for example, *svätyňa*, *oltár*, *hriech*, *anjel*, *raj*, *peklo*, *blahoslavený*, *požehnaný*, *milosrdný*, *všemohúci*, *nebeský*, *spasiť*, *rozjímať*, *zatratiť*. But several of them are used in poetry as well as in colloquial style. For example *hriech*, *chrám*, *anjel*, etc.

**Expressive words.** There are two basic groups of expressive words: positive and negative. Both may provoke emotions of joy and love, or sorrow, hate and anger.

Words with a positive impact are family words, hypocoristic words, child words and euphemisms. The group of words with a negative effect includes pejorative, vulgar, ironical, humorous and ridiculing words. Expressive words include also diminutives and augmentatives.

**Family words.** They are used in relations among people very close to one another. Such are, for example, *starký* (= husband), *starká* (= wife), *môj, moja* meaning “*môj manžel*” (my husband), “*moja manželka*” (my wife), *váš, vaša* meaning “*váš manžel*”, “*vaša manželka*”, *zlatko, zlatíčko* (in reference to a very close and dear person), etc.

**Hypocoristic words.** They are used in relations among members of a family, or among relatives or friends. They are formed from common nouns, e.g. *tato, ujo, strýko, sváko, dedo*. They can also be formed from the first names, e.g. *Jano, Jožo, Tereza, Stano, Ludo, Fraňo, Dežo, Sidka, Maxo, Tilda, Tono, Beta, Mišo, Kubo*. Both these types can also have the form of diminutives, e.g. *tatko, ujko, dedko, mamka, stryňká, tetuška, mamuľka, maminka, Janko, Jožko, Terezka, Stanko, Ludko, Dežko, Tonko, Betka, Kubko, Janík, Janičko, Betuška, Betulienka*.

Here are also included the surnames of married women formed by the suffix *-ka*, e.g. *Zimenka, Hofmanka, Mrázka, Haviarka*.

**Child words.** These fondling words are mostly used in dialogues with children. They are special child expressions, e.g. *bacat* (bit), *bakaný* (špinavý), *bó* (bolest), *bobo* (mátoha), *bokať* (bozkať), *búvať* (spať), *packa* (mierny úder), *papa* (jedlo), *papať* (jesť), *cucu* (cukríky), *čača* (pekná vec), *hačnúť* (sahnúť), *hajať* (spať), *havo* (pes), etc.

**Euphemisms.** They belong to the group of positive words. They cover up unpleasant, rough, or unsuitable phenomena by replacing them with mild or vague expressions. Thus, for example, the words *rozveseliť sa* can be used instead of the usual *opiť sa*, *básniť* instead of *luhať*, *zapáchať* instead of *smrdieť*, etc. The role of euphemisms is to cover direct expressing of some thoughts and emotions. Thus, they fulfil the opposite role to that of synonyms like *umrieť* – *zdochnúť*; cf. the euphemistic expression *znečistiť* instead of *pošpiniť*. Therefore euphemisms are also called melioratives.

**Pejorative words.** Apart from their basic meaning these words also express a negative, denying attitude of the speaker towards reality. Most frequently the suffixes themselves denote a negative attitude towards the item named, e.g. *hltoň, chrapúň, skupáň; jašo, škuľo, hluchaňa, krikľuň, darebák, mumák, smradúch, slaboch, čaptoš, frfloš, babroš, krivuľa, trepaj, hlavaj*, etc. Pejorative words are the counterparts of euphemisms. These are dysphemisms by which some negative properties are exaggerated.

Augmentative words can often be used as pejorative words, e.g. *psisko, babisko*. On the other hand some diminutives can also be used to express the pejorativeness, e.g. *maznáčik, bachráčik*.

**Vulgar words** also have a negative meaning. They express the denying attitude of the speaker to reality. Such rude words are, however, typical of an unsociable way of speaking. Vulgar words are sometimes synonyms to neutral names. For example, the vulgar *zdochnúť* is used instead of the neutral *zomrieť*, *preslopať* instead of *prepiť*, the vulgar *žrať* instead of *jesť*, the vulgar *žranica* is used instead of the neutral *jedlo*, etc.

The group of vulgar words also includes affronts. They are rough, offensive names of persons, e.g. *lotor, smrad*. Most often they are the names of animals transposed to

persons, e.g. *praša, sviňa, medveď, zmija, kôň, hyena, krava*, etc. Affronts are also considered as dysphemisms, the counterparts of euphemisms.

Words take on an ironic meaning when used intentionally to express an opposite or a different tendency. This is usually connected to a certain context or a certain situation. For example, the sentence *Ty si mudrák* can be used instead of *Ty si hlupák*, or *To sa ti podarilo* instead of *To si pokazil*. Intonation of the sentence and the extralinguistic means, e.g. a gesture, play an important role here.

A humorous meaning is imported to words when they are used as metaphors in certain context or situation. For example, the word *kancelária* is used instead of the word *záchod*, the expression *mokrá štvrt* instead of *hostinec*, *búchačka* instead of *puška*, *cibule* instead of *hodiny*, or the word *hrmotruhlica* instead of the neutral *klavír*.

Words used jocosely may also have a metaphorical meaning, their ludicrousness arising in certain situation. Thus, for example, the word *cedák*, meaning “a strainer”, can also be used to mean “an old, deformed hat”. The word *cedák* then gains in ridicule or derision. The word *kikiríkať* (to crow) can be used to refer to an unpleasant, strident human voice or singing, e.g. in the construction *kikiríka ako mladý kohút*.

Diminutives. By means of suffixes added to words, diminutives express the additive meaning of diminishing. E.g. *triesočka, chvíločka, chvostík, guľôčka, kvapôčka, klátik, pastierik, dcéruška, vojačik, vtáčatko, žiačik, zvonček, izbička, bundička, psíček, chlapča, káčatko*, etc. They frequently include a positive emotive aspect of meaning as well.

Some of the original diminutives do not imply a diminutive meaning in contemporary Slovak. For example the words *hodinky, lístok* have already lost the diminishing character. At present they mean “a watch”, “a ticket”. They only denote variants of the meanings of the basic words. They have also lost the emotive charge: this is also true of the following words: *stolička, stánok, článok*, etc. Sometimes, an original diminutive ending is used for emotive purposes only: *mama – mamička* (mother – mum), *otec – otecko* (father – dad). Here the apparently diminutive derivatives express a greater degree of intimacy, without any reference to, say, height, etc.

Augmentatives, as compared to diminutives, never have solely a quantitative character: the quantitative character is to be found only in constructions like *veľký dom*. This is such a fine difference between “quantitative-qualitative” and “qualitative” augmentatives as to be hardly perceptible and might conveniently be omitted. For example *psisko* (veľký protivný pes), *vrabčisko* (veľký bezočivý vrabec). The qualitative character is to be found in the augmentative based on the worse understanding of the object as being bigger than the other objects of the same kind. For example *psisko* (the pejorative name of *pes*), *lotrisko* (the pejorative equivalent to the word *lotor*).



## DIFFERENTIATION OF THE VOCABULARY FROM THE SEMANTIC POINT OF VIEW

**Polysemous words.** The basic property of polysemous words is that they have several meanings. This property is called polysemy. Such a common word as *hlava* means not only “a part of the body”, but also “intellect” (*mať hlavu*), in the metaphorical sense of the word it means “life” (*prísť o hlavu*), an “individual” (*výroba na hlavu*), but also “a leader” (*hlava štátu*), “a part of a machine or a tool” (*hlava motora, hlava koleša*), “a thing similar to a head” (*kapustná hlava*). The word *veľký* may mean “great, big, broad, large” (*veľký byt*), “high” (*veľký strom*), “adult” (*keď bude veľký*), “considerable” (*veľký rozdiel*), “enthusiastic” (*veľký športovec*), “important” (*veľký človek*), “long” (*veľké meškanie*). The word *mútiť* means “to stir” (*mútiť vodu*), “to trouble” (*mútiť hlavu*), “to churn” (*mútiť maslo*).

**Homonyms.** Homonyms are words of same form but different from the semantic and etymological point of view. For example, *zámok* (castle), *zámok* (a lock); *čelo* (a forehead), *čelo* (a cello); *more* (a sea), *more* (a nickname for a Gipsy); *kopať* (to dig), *kopať* (to kick).

A polysemous word may have several meanings, but it still remains the same word. The word *hlava*, for example, in its basic meaning designates a part of the body, all the other meanings, e.g. “a leader of a state”, etc. are added to it. On the other hand, the meanings of homonyms have no common basis; e.g. in the homonyms *more* (a sea) and *more* (a nickname for a Gipsy). These words are not related by their meaning, and from this point of view they have nothing in common.

An important criterion for determining the boundaries between homonymy and polysemy is the possibility to connect the words in question with other words.

Thus, for example, the word *niekoľko* can be connected only with a noun, e.g. *niekoľko ľudí*. But the word *mnoho* can be connected also with other parts of speech, e.g. *mnoho písať*. The construction *niekoľko písal* cannot be used. The words *niekoľko* and *mnoho* are pronouns. The word *mnoho* may also be an adverb, but only if connected with a verb: the pronoun *mnoho* is thus the homonym to the adverb *mnoho*.

As a rule, homonyms originated when polysemy disintegrated and two independent names ensued. For example, the meaning of the word *pero* (a feather) is not related to the word *pero* (a pen) any more, but in the past people really wrote with quills – goose feathers.

We distinguish three types of homonyms: lexical, morphological and phonetic.

Words may have the same form from the phonetic as well as the orthographic point of view, e.g. *zámok* (a castle), *zámok* (a lock), *čelo* (a forehead), *čelo* (a cello). The words equal in their forms are called *homofor*ms. E.g. *zlava* (a reduction), *zlava* (from the left), *otcov* (father's), *otcov* (a noun in the gen. and acc. pl.), *tri* (three), *tri* (rub!). Words different in their forms but equal phonetically, are called *homopho*nes. E.g. *prúd* (a current), *prút* (a rod), *plod* (a fruit), *plot* (a fence).

**Synonyms.** Words with different forms, their meaning being almost identical, are considered as synonyms. They may denote similar objects or phenomena, or close

concepts. For example: *smelosť, odvaha; smelý, odvážny; ísť, kráčať; smelo, odvážne*.

Synonymy is to be found in a greater number of words, not only in pairs. Thus we distinguish synonymous pairs, e.g. *smelosť, odvážnosť; bojovný, udatný; spať, driemať* and synonymous chains. e.g. *smelosť, chrabrosť, odvážnosť, hrdinskosť, bravúrnosť; smelý, odvážny, hrdinský, bravúrny; spať, driemať, drichmať, chrápať; smelo, odvážne, hrdinsky*.

Synonyms are divided into semantic, e.g. *ísť, kráčať*, and stylistic, e.g. *väznica, temnica, árešt, basa*. The word *kráčať* (to go) also includes the meaning of the word *ísť*, but also some additive nuances: to make exactly measured steps. Therefore, the synonyms of this type are called semantic synonyms. On the other hand, the words *väznica, temnica, árešt, basa* (= a prison) differ stylistically from each other: *väznica* is the neutral word, *temnica* is the archaic word, *áreštis* the dialectal word, *basa* is the slang word. Therefore, these are called stylistic synonyms.

Besides those mentioned, doublet synonymous pairs are also to be found in the Slovak language. They are equal in their meanings as well as from the stylistic point of view. They are also called absolute synonyms. For example: *jazykoveda, lingvistika; pravopis, ortografia; zemepis, geografia*. They are bookish words with the character of technical terms.

**Antonyms.** Antonyms differ from the phonetic point of view and express a contrary meaning. Antonyms always occur in pairs. For example: *tma, svetlo; studený, horúci; hovoriť, mlčať; dobre, zle*.

Antonyms – as well as synonyms and homonyms – always belong to the same part of speech.

Antonyms may express a contrast in time, e.g. *včera, dnes*; in place, e.g. *hore, dolu*; in space, e.g. *východ, západ*; in size, e.g. *veľký, malý*; in volume, e.g. *hrubý, tenký*; in state, e.g. *zdravý, chorý*; in action, e.g. *pracovať, leňošiť*, etc.

Antonymous pairs are usually formed from words of different roots and bases. But we also know antonyms that have the same root from the etymological point of view, e.g. *začiatok, koniec*.

We distinguish two types of antonyms. The first group includes words in common use, e.g. *život, smrť; láska, nenávisť; vysoký, nízky; hovoriť, mlčať; vysoko, nízko; tu, tam*.

The second group includes lexical units used in opposition, but not forming common antonymic pairs. Only occasionally – when used in different stylistic meanings – do they contrast with each other as antonyms. For example: (*som tvoj*) *pán i sluha; (žil) za horami, za dolami*. Sometimes they are called contextual or stylistic antonyms, but they cannot be included among lexical antonyms.

## DIFFERENTIATION OF THE VOCABULARY FROM THE SOCIAL AND TERRITORIAL POINTS OF VIEW

From the social and territorial points of view the vocabulary may be divided into words of a common, generalized use, and words with a limited use.

**Words commonly used** include names of objects and phenomena essential to man's life. They are the names of natural phenomena (*zem, voda, rieka, dážď, les*), the names of fundamental procedures and techniques (*orať, tkať, tesáť, kosiť, variť, piecť*), the names of instruments and tools (*sekera, motyka, kladivo, nôž, ihla*), the names of products (*pšenica, jačmeň, súkno, slama, múka*), the names of domestic as well as wild animals (*kôň, krava, ovca, medveď*), the names of birds (*vrana, holub, lastovička, orol, slávik*), the names of fishes (*hlavátka, kapor, štika*), the names of members of the family and relatives (*otec, matka, dcéra, vnuk, muž, dedo*), the names of the parts of body (*hlava, noha, ruka, oko, brada*), the names of drinks and meals (*mlieko, víno, maslo, syr, mäso*), the names of localities, living and dwelling -places (*dedina, mesto, dom, izba*), the names of qualities of objects (*biely, chladný, kyslý, zlatý*), the names of quantities (*tri, päť, sto, tisíc*), words pointing to objects; their qualities (*ja, ten, taký, tak*), words expressing the idea of space, emotions (*pred, pod, nad, joj, čľup*), etc. Verbal interactions, exchange of ideas and experience could not take place without such words.

**Dialectisms** are used intentionally in the poetic style. Lexical dialectal words belong to the lexical stock of dialects and as such they are distinguished only in connection with a study of the standard language.

Lexical dialectal words proper have their standard equivalents. For example *dovčúľ (doteraz), havránka (olovrant), drobnica (osýpky), lojtra (rebríček), nazraň (zrána), obalkovať (ponevieráť sa), pašmať (hľadať, dráždiť), pobalúšiť (pobúriť), poglibaný (pokrčený), potlkeň (tulák), rafika (palica, tyč), zdúdlieť (skrčiť sa), sirky (zápalky)*. Lexical dialectal words have their absolute synonyms in the standard language.

**Ethnographic dialectal words** are to be found only in certain local dialects. They are the names of specific phenomena familiar only in some territories of the standard language. Therefore, these dialectal words cannot have their absolute synonyms in the standard language. They are names of clothes, names of parts of homes, names of various tools, etc. For example *jakľa* (a part of a woman's costume worn over a blouse), *guba* (a coat from a thick material), *hrbánik* (a kind of a pocket knife), *penál* (a penknife), *príchlop* (a lean-to, a linhay), *pučidlo* (a potato-masher), *žudro* (an arched entrance to a village house).

**Semantic dialectal words** may be homonymous with words of the standard language. For example, *oprava* (repair in the standard language, but a fence in a dialect), *priemysel* (industry in the standard language and ingenuity in a dialect), *sídlo* (1. a living place, 2. a dwelling in the standard language and a snare, a noose in a dialect), *hrubý* (thick in the standard language but big in a dialect).

**Lexical-phonetic dialectal words** differ from the standard words only in their phonetic features. For example, *chujavica* (standard – *fujavica, chumelica*), *chrablavý* (standard – *chraplavý*), *kudiť sa* (standard – *údiť sa*), *hržať* (standard – *erdžať*).

**Argot words** are used by a particular social class or group. It may be an underground group or a clique, e.g. thieves' argot. A group of people of the same occupation may use their own language to hide their ideas and thoughts. For example the roaming craftsmen may have their own secret language.

Argot words are not basic. They are parallel expressions for real phenomena. For example, the word *kapustnica* in the language of the Upper-Trenčín tinkers means *káva*, *dym* means *pálené*, *vrana* is *koruna*, *sýkorka* is *policajný strážnik*, *brká* means *topánky*, *vyvírac* means *utekať*, *vybrúsiť* means *prehladať*, etc. Some of the argot words are taken over from foreign languages, e.g. Hungarian : *halúň (nocľah)*, *keňér (chlieb)*, *šero (pivo)*, *nairnekovac (napísať)*, *vyčínanič (zarobiť)*, etc.

**Slang words**, though not meant to hide their primary meaning are nevertheless not readily understood by other groups of the society. Word deformation is typical of slang; for example student slang: *deják (dejepis)*, *zemák (zemepis)*, *vyučko (vyučovanie)*, *vysvečko (vysvedčenie)*. Word-forming methods in slang involve word-shortening or clipping special suffixes, or the combination of both. From this point of view words like *bezva*, *senzi*, *jasnačka*, *kamoš*, *kamoška*, *profák (profesor)*, *kóna (kompozícia)*, *asák (asistent)*, *labák*, are rather typical. The considerable expressivity in slang words is conditioned by effort at originality, or at innovation. Slang words may be compound, e.g. *trasihlava*, *vtichvost*, *lomidrevo*, etc. They may have a metaphorical meaning, e.g. the word *letieť* can be used instead of *dostať päťorku*, the word *bahniť* can be used instead of *odpočívať*, the word *silážovať* instead of *jesť študentský cirkus* instead of *voľná hodina*, etc. Slang words can also be the names taken over from foreign language, e.g. *fajn* (Germ., good), *nebesíľuj* (Hung., do not speak), etc. or from other slangs, e.g. from the military slang *ucho* we have *ucháň* (a first year student).

**Professional words** name objects and their qualities connected with certain work-places, certain working activities, or occupations.

They are close to colloquial words in that they are often one-word names. E.g. the word *pásák* is used instead of the two-word expression *pásový traktor*, *karbidka* instead of *karbidová lampa*, the word *notárstvo* instead of *štátne notárstvo*, the word *bezpečnosť* is used instead of *verejná bezpečnosť*, and the word *vnútro* instead of *ministerstvo vnútra*.

**Technical terms** are words or combinations of words that name special concepts, objects, phenomena, their qualities and actions. Their origin and function depend on the development of science and technology, of political and cultural life. They differ from current terms in having usually only one meaning.

**Archaic words.** Words become archaic when they pass over from the active to the passive vocabulary and are then gradually forgotten until they drop out completely from current use.

Outmoded words that are not in current use any more and whose meaning is not obvious to contemporary users of the standard language without some explanation, have already been practically removed from the present language. Therefore, they belong to some previous period of the language development.

We recognize two groups of outmoded words. Words have become historically obsolete because the object which they designated has passed out of use, e.g. *bíreš* – formerly a farm-labourer at an estate; *boženík* – a member of a district council in the past; *cylinderky* – a watch of an older type, etc. Apart from those mentioned, there exist antiquated words, that have been replaced by new words of the same meaning. These are called archaic words, e.g. *černilo* – *atrament* (ink), *bičik* – *sláčik*

(violin bow), *biednik* – *úbožiak* (poor wretch), *bytovať* – *bývať* (to dwell), *cvičba* – *cvičenie* (an exercise), *časoslovo* – *sloveso* (verb), etc.

Newly-coined words which are still in the passive vocabulary are called **neologisms**. The words *nadplán*, *previerka*, *nábor*, *agitátor*, *úchylka*, etc. have been neologisms for the last thirty years. Such words remain neologisms until they pass over to the active vocabulary. Initially the use of such words is usually restricted to a small group of people, to members of a certain profession, and becomes only late adapted by the majority or by the whole nation. Words like *aspirín*, *autobus*, *televízor*, *rádio* have passed over to the active vocabulary and are not understood as neologisms any more.

New words designating new objects and concepts appear and soon enter the neutral vocabulary, especially when the new things they stand for and their properties become familiar, e.g. *ministerka*, *námestníčka*, *družica*, *lunochod*, etc.

Neologisms in technical terminology become readily generalized in a very short time when they designate things and phenomena relating to new discoveries, for example, *protón*, *elektrón*, *neutrón*.

When forming neologisms we use linguistic elements and forms already in existence. Neologisms may be formed by means of affixes, e.g. *triedič*, *odklasňovač*; or by joining words or their combinations, e.g. *vodostrek*, *vodomet*, *zlepšovaci návrh*, *národný výbor*, etc.

Neologisms are also taken over from foreign languages or from international terminology, e.g. from Russian: *kolchoz*, *sovchoz*, *soviet*, *boľševik*, *lunochod*; from Czech: *úkol*, *dotaz*, etc. International neologisms derived from Greek and Latin elements are, for example, the terms *kybernetika*, *fuťrológia*, *kozmonautika*, *ekosféra*, *gagarinit*, etc. Neologisms can also be derived as loan translations. The German word *Unterernährung* has been translated morpheme by morpheme as *podvýživa*, the adjective *pravdepodobný* is translated from Latin *verisimilis*, *zemepis* is the translation from the Greek word *geographia*, etc.

## DIFFERENTIATION OF THE VOCABULARY FROM THE POINT OF VIEW OF ITS ORIGIN

**Native words.** As to the relative chronology there are several strata to be found in the native vocabulary: Indo-European words, e.g. the ancient names of animals, products, and meals, as *býk*, *vlk*, *ovca*, *myš*, *mäso*; words common to Slavonic and Baltic languages, e.g. *krava*, *roh*, *vrana*, *orech*, *nôž*, *vrch*, *sladký*, *dívať sa*; Slavonic (Old-Slavonic) words, e.g. the names of relatives, *otec*, *matka*, *syn*, *dcéra*, *brat*, *sestra*, *vnuč*, *ded*, *babka*, *svokor*, and also *zať*, *nevesta*, *strýc*, *ujec*, *teta*, *bratanec*, *synovec*, *otčim*, *macocha*, *sesternica*, *vďova*; the onomatopoeic words *chrápať*, *chrčať*, *chvastať sa*; words of various origins: *pes*, *medveď*, *had*, *pole*, *slza*, *starý*; words taken over from Germanic languages in the Old-Slavonic period: *peniaz*, *mýto*, *kúpiť*, *kňaz*, *meč*, *kotol*, *chyža*, *panva*, *sklo*, *pluh*, *chlieb*, *lichva*, and words taken over from the Iranian language in the Old-Slavonic period: *kniha*, *topor*.

Many words were taken over from other Slavonic languages.

The oldest group of such words includes religious words from the Old Church Slavonic language: *div, duša, hospodin, hriech, milostivý, spasit', svätý, viera*.

During the Hungarian period the Slovaks were in contact with the Czech countries. The Czech language had been the standard language to the Slovaks until the standard Slovak language was established. The following words were taken over from Czech in that period: *tázať sa, otázka, prozreteľnosť, Mojžiš*. The words *náležitý, nepretržitý, cit, látka, znesiteľný, bájka, zrozumiteľný, dôverník, určitý, všeobecný, námiетка, neukojiteľný* had been taken over in the 18th century. In the first half of the 19th century the following words were taken over from Czech into Slovak: *spor, dejiny, príloha, predstava, pojem, sústava, veda, mladosť, predmet, účel, výsledok, zámer, poznatok, dojem, názor, časopis, rozbor, úvaha, výrok, jednotlivý, vkus, nutný, totožný, posudzovať, označiť, sloh, uskutočniť*. The following grammatical terms also come from that period: *mluvnica, časovanie, nárečie, prídavné meno, podmet, samohláska* and also the words from the natural sciences *nerast, rastlina, dusík, kyslík, kyselina, prvok, zlúčenina, štvorec, trojuholník*. In the recent period the following words have been taken over from Czech: *pilnosť, pilný, úkol, žiaden, samozrejme*.

In the second half of the 19th century the following words were taken over from Russian: *rozkol, vzduch, kormidlo, vesna, slovesnosť, prelest', rozpoloženie, čudesný, baško, blahodarný, trud, iskrenný, dejstvovať, jestvovať, činovník, čuvstvovať*. In the 20th century after the Great October Socialist Revolution the following words were taken over: *rozviedčik, kulak, šturmovčina, bielogvardejec, trockista, subotnik, kaľuša, staršina, robotčik*.

In the 19th century several Yugoslav words were taken over and the following have remained in use in Slovak until today: *omladina, zdravica, junák, prepodit', častovať*.

The words *motyka, kresliť, revnivý, zdroj, tkvieť* were taken from Polish.

The Roman Christian terminology spread on present-day Slovak territory during the Hungarian period, when Hungary had ties with western Christian countries. The following terms come from that period: *almužna, birmovať, cirkev, krst, oltár, koleda, rekviem, procesia, litánie, oblátka, kantor, chór, hymna, biblia, breviár, epištola, pohan*. In the Middle Ages Latin was the official and scientific language in Hungary. Various words of a political-juristic character have remained since then, e.g. *oficiál, inzerát, patent, privilégium, senátor, kurátor, disciplína, notár, protokol, kredit, vakácie, reštaurácia, kandidát, kongregácia, patrón* and the names of the months.

Some words relating to the political and economic system were taken over from Hungaria, e.g. *išpán, vicišpán, hajdúch, rováš, dereš*. The following are Hungarian words coming from earlier periods: *ťarcha, vankúš, ľava, klobása, čardáš, čizma, koč, šiator, tábor, oldomáš, banovať, barnavý, biľag, bosorka, chýr*.

Many words relating crafts were taken over from German. E.g. *cech, cechmajster, garbiar, kušnier, dratva, hoblík, haviar, fárať, plech, farba, golier, fľaša*.

Some Romanic words pertaining chiefly to sheep tending penetrated into Slovak in the 13th – 17th centuries, during the Wallachian colonization of the Carpathian

mountains. Such are, for example, *bača, kľag, vatra, geleta, žinčica, putera, bryndza, fujara, grúň, koliba, košiar, riava, strunga, salaš, cap, čutora*.

The words *fortissimo, fortepiano, allegro, allegretto, intermezzo, adagio, capriccio, fugato, dolce, doloroso* are of Italian origin.

The following words were taken over from French: *rúž, sezóna, garnitúra, vizita, rola, parola, detail, filiálka, devíza, silueta, repertoár, garderóba, gardedáma, bagáž, model*.

Many sport terms were taken over from English. They are, for example, *futbal, gól, šprint, šport, volejbal, basketbal, half, fair, knokaut, aut, derby, coach, boxing, double, doublista, boby, backhand, finišman*. Words designating various social phenomena were also taken over from English: *biznis, biznisman, clearing, dancing, dandy, džentry, džez, handicap, gentleman, charleston, klaun, jeep, jazzband, bungalow, víkend, smoking, pulóver, sveter*.

## SENTENCE

A sentence is a part of an utterance expressing a complete idea and creating a grammatical unit. The textual unit, mentioned below, can be divided into five semantic units.

*Lena skamenela. Ako tráva v prudkom víchre zakolísalo sa jej telo. Zdesené zrenice stvrkli jej prostred očí. Tiché, bolestné šialenstvo vyronilo jej noviny z rúk. Lena chcela vykriknúť...*

Each of the five units is independent in its meaning as well as grammatically. Every such semantic unit is a sentence, as well as a part of a larger utterance, or a part of the situation in which it is pronounced.

**Functional sentence perspective.** The part of the sentence, expressing something new is called its *r h e m e*. At the same time, each sentence is based on what is evident either from the text or from the situation. Thus we see that it forms part of a more extensive utterance or situation. In other words, the *t h e m e* is another part of the sentence, different from its *r h e m e*. The theme helps to connect a sentence to an utterance or situation. The theme is the known part of a sentence.

Here is an example with an objective order of themes and rhemes.

*Na úbočí stál starý dub. Dub mal kdesi zhora veľkú dieru. V diere sa každú jar liahli škorce. Škorce sa po vyliahnutí rozleteli do blízkeho lesa. Les sa ozýval spevom najrozličnejších vtákov...*

In changing the order of the themes and rhemes we obtain a subjective order.

*Na úbočí stál starý dub, ktorý mal kdesi zhora veľkú dieru. Krásne škorce sa liahli v tej diere každú jar. Škorce sa po vyliahnutí rozleteli do blízkeho lesa. Nádherný spev najrozličnejších vtákov sa ozýval po celom lese.*

**The sound structure of a sentence.** A sentence is an acoustic unit. The sound structure of a sentence is rich and complicated. By means of sound we can express many semantic as well as emotional nuances. When investigating the sound aspect of a sentence, the following items are taken into consideration : pitch of voice, strength of voice and its distribution.

Let us note these items separately, in the complex sentence : *Eva sa premáha, aby Katkina matka nepobadala na nej mdlobu.*

If the sentence is studied as to the pitch, we notice a certain modulation in the voice. The pitch changes. The word *premáha* is pronounced with a higher and the words *mdloba* with a lower pitch. A very simple scheme showing changes in the pitch may look as follows :



*Eva sa premáha, aby Katkina matka nepobadala na nej mĎlobu.*

These changes in pitch are termed tone. Without it the utterance would be less intelligible.

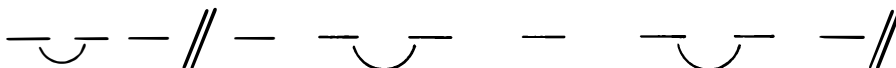
Now let us look at the strength or intensity of the voice which is important for the pronunciation of individual words. We may not realize it in speech, yet words or syllables are pronounced with a different intensity of voice. The following scheme indicates the changes in voice intensity in the above sentence.



*Eva sa premáha, aby Katkina matka nepobadala na nej mĎlobu.*

This is called stress or emphasis.

Now, let us note the interruption in the utterance, its segmentation with the help of a pause. When pronouncing the sentence there are no pauses before the word *sa*, *matka*, *nej*, but pauses follow the words *premáha* and *mĎlobu*. The following scheme shows the places with the longest pauses, as well as those with no pauses:



*Eva sa premáha, aby Katkina matka nepobadala na nej mĎlobu.*

Pauses at the marked places may but need not be made. When dealing with interruption of an utterance we speak about a pause or about breaking down the sentence into sections. The length of the sections depends on the speed of utterance, on the speaker.

The difference between stress and emphasis. If we speak about a word, the term stress is used; in standard Slovak the stress is always on the first syllable of the word. In the case of sentence, the term emphasis applied (the main emphasis is on the rheme).

The sound structure of a sentence is also dealt with in the chapter “Prosodic properties of the sentence”.

**The grammatical structure of a sentence.** A sentence may consist of one or more words: *Horí!, Pozor!, Prosím?, Ach!, Kdeže!, Poľovník strieĎa., Stromy kvitnú...*

To express a relation between an agent and an action we use a sentence with two basic elements: subject and predicate.

If only one predicate is needed to express an idea, the sentence is simple. For example: *Otec fajčí. Hodiny sa mĎňajú. Prideme. Poumývaj sa!* The simple sentence is said to be bare if it consists of a subject and predicate only. *Schôdzka*

sa začala; or it can be extended if it includes other sentence elements or if any of its elements is pre- or post-modified, or both. *Dnešná schôdzka sa začala neskoro po desiatej hodine.*

We, however, do not use only simple sentences. The more complicated ideas are expressed by means of complex or compound sentences. The complex or compound sentence is one which has more predicates: *Zbrane zúrili jediným nepretržitým revom, ktorý Jerguš možno ani nepočul, lebo trval už piaty alebo šiesty deň a neutichal ani v noci.*

## TYPES OF SENTENCES

**Types of sentences according to the speaker's attitude.** According to the speaker's attitude to the circumstances, we distinguish the following types of sentences:

declarative,  
interrogative,  
imperative.

**Declarative sentences** are the basic and most frequent. They occur in all styles. For example: *Ukázal mi cestu. Dnes celý deň prší. Zajtra odcestujem do Prahy.*

**Interrogative sentences.** In Slovak questions are not formed with the aid of an auxiliary, as in English (do, does, did). In wh-questions interrogative pronouns are used (*kto, čo, ako, kedy, kde, komu...*), as it is also in English. In yes/no question the "leading" word stands at the beginning of the sentence. If such a word is inside the sentence, it is emphasized. The wh-questions: *Kto ma volal? Kde si bola? Prečo si neprišiel?* The yes/no questions: *Písal si už matke? Pozerala si včera televíziu? Nekúpil si desiatu? Môj článok si čítal?*

**Imperative sentences.** They can be found in dialogues, in rhetorical utterances and in poetic style. The verb in the imperative mood need not be used here: *Pridať pary! Chlapci, sem sa!*

**Exclamatory sentences.** Any sentence may become emotional expressing joy, grief, astonishment, etc., and thus turn into an exclamatory sentence; this transition will be marked only by intonation: *A čo len je tej vody! Kdeže si bol? Zmiznúť!*

## WORD-ORDER

The word-order in Slovak is not arbitrary, the words in the sentence cannot be placed anywhere. Sentences constructed without any rules as to their word-order are gibberish: *Mu si prečo by no ho nepožičal? Na prečítať druhej si môže to strane tej. Jediný tam jeden neobjavil ani sa človek.*

Word-order in a sentence is governed by certain factors: functional sentence perspective (see. p. 130), the grammatical factor and the rhythmical factor.

The grammatical factor determines the place of the attribute, which is always

placed before or after the expression it modifies (*malý koncert, septembrové ráno, deravé topánky, moja matka, revúcky študent...*).

The congruent attribute follows the noun only in the following cases:

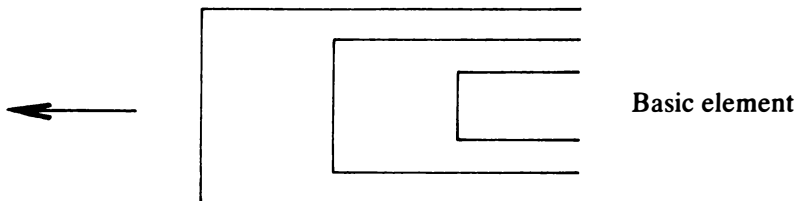
a) in technical terminology and biblical expressions, which are influenced by foreign languages, especially Latin, e.g. *kyselina sírová, tlapka riečna, Písmo sväté...*;

b) if the attribute is emphasized, e.g. *nie ruža červená, ale žltá; takúto melódiu môžeme nazvať i melódiou objektívnou...*;

c) in emotive exclamations and invectives, e.g. *mamička moja, panebože milostivý, háveď jedna, pobeňaj akýsi, lotor lotrovský...*

The basic order is 1. the congruent attribute, 2. the head-word element. An inverted order is symptomatical.

If the head-word element is preceded by more attributes, their basic order is given by the content and extent of the meaning. The attribute with the narrowest extent but the largest content of the word meaning comes directly before. The further before it there is the one with a broader extent and a narrower content of the word meaning and so forth. This can be expressed as follows:



*všetky naše nové rodinné starosti*

An extended attribute usually follows the noun, e.g. *žiaci, pripravení už na slávnosť*, and not *na slávnosť už pripravení žiaci*. This can always be transformed into a subordinate relative clause that also always follows the qualified head-word: *žiaci, ktorí sú už pripravení na slávnosť*.

A non-congruent attribute always follows the modified element, e.g. *výzdoba javiska, kvocient úmrtnosti, sklamanie susediek, svadba Čajkovej, vrecebielej múky na pečenie...* If the attributes refer to the same noun, the whole expression can be combined in several ways as regards style.

*Dnes ideme do bratovej záhrady a zajtra do mojej.* Emotionally: *Dnes ideme do záhrady bratovej a zajtra do mojej.* In the common colloquial speech: *Dnes ideme do bratovej záhrady a zajtra do mojej.* Or: *Dnes ideme do bratovej a zajtra do mojej záhrady.*

The rhythmical factor is applied with respect to the position of enclitics. Some words are emphatic, others have an inconspicuous emphasis and the rest are without any emphasis at all. These unemphatic words, related to some extent to other words, are called enclitics. Such are the short forms of pronouns (*ma, ťa, sa, ho, mi, ti, si, mu...*), the forms of the auxiliary verb *byť* (*som, si, je, sme, ste, sú*) and the particle *by*. These words always follow the first sentence element. They can also be preceded

by a conjunction, e.g. *Akýmsi čudným spôsobom si pripomenul inú, celkom novú vôňu. Opitý spev a zachrípnutá harmonika sa kdesi v doline snúbili tak hlasne.*

If there are more than one enclitic in a sentence, all come after the first sentence element that follows a pause, e.g. *Skúsenejší človek by bol všetko zbadal. Nesmela som sadať, lebo by sa mi bol ten pacholok vysmieval, že som bojko. Ešte si sa Šimúnovi aj vysmieval.*

If several enclitics occur in a sentence, they are arranged in the following order: 1. *by*, 2. the forms of *byť*, 3. the pronoun *sa* or *si*, 4. the short forms of the pronouns in the dative (*mi*, *ti*, *mu*), 5. the short forms of the pronouns in the accusative (*ma*, *ťa*, *ho*). E.g. *by som si, by sme sa mu, by sme ti mu ho*... If not all the enclitics mentioned in the groups are present, the rest is arranged in the same order, e.g. *by ti ho, sme mu ho, mi ťa, mu ho*, etc. Examples in sentences: *A keď som sa mu vyhovárala, prekvapilo ho to. Dlho som si ho nevšímala. Ja by som mu bol hádal aspoň dvadsať. Čo by si mi ty radil? Dnes by sme ťa neboli stretli. Včera by sme si ho boli vzali.*

The word-order as to the enclitics is similar to that in the Romance languages.

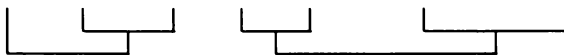
## RELATIONS IN SENTENCES

1. The basic unit of a linguistic utterance is the sentence. A sentence consists of words. The words in a sentence are organized in a particular manner. As a rule, two and two sentence elements are related in a particular way to form syntagms. Here are examples showing how the members of a sentence are connected to form syntagms.

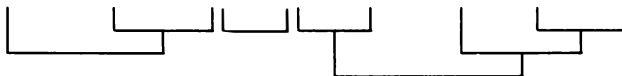
*Naše oddelenie splnilo svoj celoročný plán.*



*Všetci učitelia a žiaci odišli dnes na vlastivednú exkurziu.*



*Každý uvedomelý občan chápe význam nášho boja za mier.*



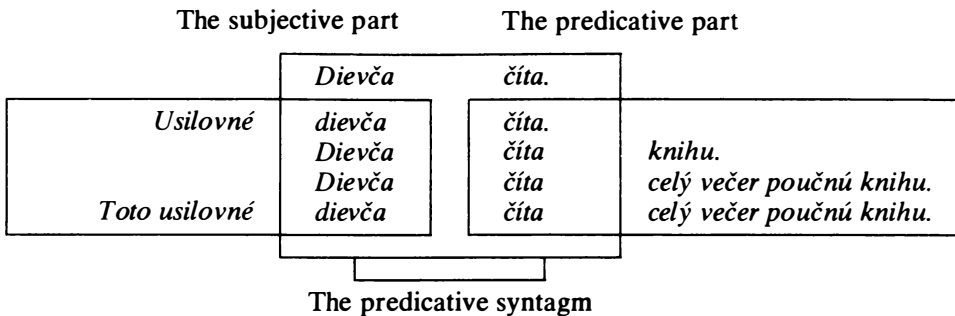
Neither grammatical words (prepositions, conjunctions) nor particles and interjections enter the syntagms. Grammatical words cannot fill the function of sentence elements.

2. Three kinds of syntagms are known according to the way in which sentence elements are related.

a) The most important is the relation between subject and predicate, called the predicative syntagm. In the predicative syntagm one element (predicate) ascribes an action, a stage or property to the other element (subject), e.g.

- The action *Dievča číta.*
- The stage *Ovocie dozrieva.*
- The property *Počasie je pekné.*

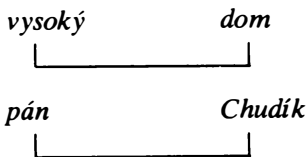
For example :



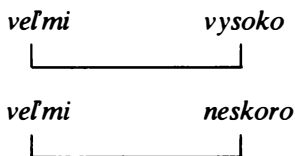
b) The subordinative syntagm. One of the members of the sentence may be further determined or supplemented by an other, in the determinative syntagm. One is modified, the other one is modifying. The relation between these two members constitute the subordinative syntagm.

For example :


The connection between the attribute and the sentence element:  
The subordinate element. The head-word.




The connection between the adverb and the sentence element:  
The subordinate element. The head-word.




The connection between the verb and the modifying element:  
 The head-word. The subordinate element.


*pozval priateľa*  


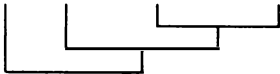
*pozval rýchlo*  


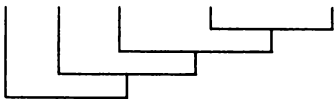
*pozval na večeru*  

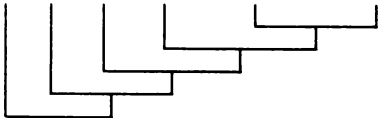

The sentence element can be extended. A new attribute is always related to the whole unit:

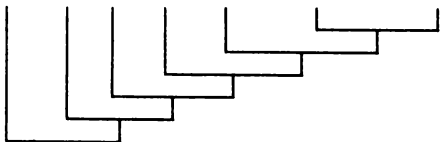
*rekreačné podniky*  


*nové rekreačné podniky*  


*štyri nové rekreačné podniky*  


*vaše štyri nové rekreačné podniky*  


*tie vaše štyri nové rekreačné podniky*  


*všetky tie vaše štyri nové rekreačné podniky*  


c) The co-ordinating syntagm. Equivalent sentences or equivalent sentence elements are connected in the co-ordinating syntagm.

Connection of nouns :	<i>učitelia aj žiaci</i>
Connection of adjectives :	<i>pekný, zdravý</i>
Connection of verbs :	<i>sedieť a čítať</i>
Connection of adverbs :	<i>včera, ale i dnes</i>

3. **Concord, government, juxtaposition.** The relation between paired elements is expressed with the help of concord, government and juxtaposition.

a) Concord consists in the fact that the dependent element agrees with its superordinate member in person, gender and number, or in gender, number and case.

Concord in the predicative syntagm. The form of the predicate is determined by the subject, i.e. the predicate takes over the gender, person and number of the subject:

<i>Dievča</i>	<i>prišlo</i>	<i>na cestu.</i>
<i>Dievčatá</i>	<i>prišli</i>	<i>na cestu.</i>
<i>Jerguš</i>	<i>prišiel</i>	<i>na cestu s matkou.</i>

Concord in the determinative syntagm. The form of the attribute is determined by the noun to which it is related. That is to say the attribute takes over the gender, number and case of the noun. For example: *Raz, keď sme sa zatúlali na malé námestie, padla nám do oka pekná novostavba školy, dvojposchodová budova s mramorovými schodmi.*

In these cases we speak of a congruent attribute.

But no agreement takes place in those cases in which the attribute is expressed by a noun. This is called a non-congruent attribute. For example: *Najviac zo všetkých sa nám páčila hra Jánošík. Ubytovali nás v hoteli Orava. Do mužstva Spartak Trnava pristúpili dvaja noví hráči.*

The relation between the detached attribute and the noun to which it is related is also subject to concord. For example: *Jana sa vrátila domov smutná. Naši bicyklisti sa v súťaži umiestnili ako piati.*

b) Government. The relation between the elements of a sentence is expressed not only by agreement, but sometimes also by government. The particular case is determined by the superordinate member of the pair. For example: *Píšem úlohu. Každému rozumel.* The cases of the words *úloha* and *každý* are determined by the verbs to which they are related.

The government expresses mainly the relation between a verb and an object. Sometimes more than one government are to be found with one verb: *učíť sa matematiku (acc.), učíť sa slušnosti (dat.), báť sa tmy (gen.), báť sa o chorú matku (acc.), zúčastniť sa na diskusii (loc.), zúčastniť sa priprav (gen.)...* (We prefer the locative case with the verb *zúčastniť sa*.)

c) Juxtaposition consists in the fact that a non-inflectional word (adverb, particle) is put close to the word which it modifies. Most frequently, the adverb or the particle precedes such a word or expression. It is made to follow it when something is to be particularly emphasized.

Examples: *Otca tá správa veľmi prekvapila, až napokon sa stal celkom nešťastným. Jurko hovorí ticho. Nuž ale bola už noc a pršalo už hodne: Matka tiež musela prísť.*

By means of juxtaposition the non-congruent attribute is connected with the word which it modifies. The form of this attribute is determined by the congruence of the noun it modifies.

Examples: *Vchod do továrne bol slávnostne vyzdobený. Veľký bol záujem o nové ovocie. Počká ešte v Trnave, dokiaľ sa mu nenaskytne možnosť odísť. Prišiel človek s veľkými okuliarmi.*

## SENTENCE ELEMENTS

The word in a sentence – the bearer of the syntactic relation – is called the sentence element.

However, there are some words in a sentence which belong there, but are not bearers of syntactic relations. For example: *Na prechádzku sa vyberiem aj ja.* Only the words *prechádzku, vyberiem, ja* are considered sentence elements. The words *na, sa, aj* are not sentence elements. The preposition *na* is a part of the prepositional construction *na prechádzku*, the reflexive pronoun *sa* is a part of the verb *vyberiem sa*, the particle *aj* emphasizes the pronoun *ja*.

The words that do not have the function of a sentence element are significant for the meaning of the sentence, but they are not autonomous units from the point of view of its grammatical construction.

The following are expressions without the function of a sentence element: a) the vocative, b) an interjection, c) insertion, d) a reflexive pronoun, e) a preposition, f) a conjunction, g) a particle.

a) The vocative is an autonomous unit. *Peter, choď kúpiť noviny! Sadnite si, chlapci, a zahrajte sa!*

b) Interjections and other expressions. They are used to express emotions: *Ej, ale si mu dala...*

Interjections can be considered as sentence elements if they play the role of a noun or a verb: *Prenikavé „fuj“ sa nieslo štadiónom. – A my všetci čľups do vody!*

c) Insertions are words or groups of words that form autonomous units in a sentence: they are inserted without being grammatically related to other parts of the sentence. For example: *Budú medzi nami, pravda, aj takí, čo nebudú súhlasíť.*

d) The reflexive pronouns *sa, si* are not the sentence elements: *smať sa, umieniť si, domy sa stavajú, pracuje sa, zíva sa mi.*

Only the reflexive pronoun that can be replaced by its longer form *seba, sebe*, can be considered as the sentence element: *umyť sa – Najprv seba umy, a potom sa staraj o druhých! – Chlapci si (= sebe, each other) pomáhajú.*

e) The preposition forms an inseparable whole with the case of the noun: *v meste, do mesta, k mestu, pred mestom, o meste...*; *odo mňa, predo mnou, o mne, podeň, nadeň...*

f) The conjunction connects the members of the sentence element or clauses to



form a higher syntactic whole, but it has not the function of the sentence element. This refers to both co-ordinating and subordinating conjunctions. For example: *Otec a matka sa vrátili, keď slnko zapadlo*. The words *a*, *keď* are not the sentence elements.

But relational words with the same function as subordinating conjunctions, are considered as sentence elements. For example: *Požičaj mi knihu, ktorú si si včera kúpil*. The word *ktorú* in this sentence connects the clauses into a complex sentence and it is also the object of the subordinate clause.

g) A particle is not a bearer of relations in a sentence, although it plays a meaningful role in it. The words *nech*, *aj* are particles in the following sentence: *Nech príde aj sám cisár, nedám...*

The **subject** is the basic part of a two-element sentence and is superior with regard to the verb in the finite form. The subject expresses the agent of the action or the bearer of the state. Usually a noun in the nominative is the subject of a sentence. For example: *Otec prichádza. Kozy sa pasú na stráni. Mokré drevo nehorí*.

The question about the subject is formed by the predicate of the sentence and the interrogative pronouns *kto*, *čo*: *Kto prichádza? Čo sa pasie na stráni? Čo nehorí?*

An adjective, a numeral, an adverb, an impersonal pronoun or an interjection are rather rare in the function of the subject. Examples: *Sýty hladnému neverí. Desať je predsa len viac ako nič. Kto nedovídi na tabuľu? Včera je príslovka. Zúfalé rata sa nieslo dedinou*.

The personal pronoun in the function of the subject is usually omitted, the grammatical person being evident from the form of the predicate. For example: *Či prídeš, či neprídeš, plakať nebudeme*. The personal pronoun is used only for the sake of emphasis or to express emotion. For example: *Tak potom to spravím ja. Ak neprídeš ty, neprídem ani ja. Ale ja sa mám s tým babrať?*

The infinitive, too, may serve as the subject, especially with the words *byť*, *znamenáť* connected with another infinitive, as the predicate. E.g. *Učiť sa znamená pripravovať sa do života. Rozkoš bola počúvať ho a hľadiť na neho. Ohovárať je nepekné*.

Sometimes the subject may be a noun in the genitive, especially when negation or quantity is to be expressed. For example: *Na smetisku niet poriadku. Nového snehu pribudlo vyše kolien. Chlapcov je vždy menej a menej. Bolo nás jedenásť, už je nás len desať...*

The subject need not be expressed in every sentence in a longer text, as it can be understood from the context. For example: *Janík ušiel tetke, od radosti skákal, váfal sa ako malé žriebä. Potom začal guľať po hradskej veľikánsku snehovú guľu*.

The **predicate** is the basic part of a two-element sentence showing concord with subject and expressing tense, mood and voice. It expresses what is said of the subject and usually consists of the verb with or without objects, complements or adverbial modifiers. For example: *Otec prichádza. Kozy sa pasú na stráni. Mokré drevo nehorí*.

We ask: *Čo robí podmet? Čo sa deje s podmetom?* According to the base of the predicate we distinguish verbal, nominal and interjectional predicates. The predica-

te is most frequently expressed by a finite form of the verb showing concord with the subject in person and number. For example: *Mesto potemnelo. Augustín Šerner chvíľu stál akoby v nedorozumení. Len potom všetko stíchlo, aby si panstvo aj oddýchlo pred poľovačkami, ktoré mali nadísať a pre ktoré vlastne prišiel na Súľov kráľovský hosť.*

If neither a noun nor a pronoun in the nominative is used as subject of a sentence, the verbal predicate is in the form of the 3rd person singular, neuter gender. For example: *Komu niet rady, tomu niet pomoci. Už dávno nedozrelo toľko ovocia ako tohto roku.*

Verbal predicate can also consist of more verbal forms, in which case it is called compound verbal predicate. E.g. *Nie div, že Miško prestal myslieť na hru. Pravdu máš, premýšľam, len domyslieť sa nemôžem. Lúky majú byť pokosené v kvete.*

The predicate may also be a noun, an adjective, a number, a pronoun or an adverb. Such a predicate is used in sayings, adages, headlines, etc. In such cases the copula is omitted: *Mladosť (je) radosť. Zápis (bude, je) denne.*

But the use of a predicate with a copula is more common and the tense and mood are expressed. The most frequent are the copulas *byť, bývať, stať sa, stávať sa, ostať, ostávať*. Examples: *Môj brat ešte nebol vojakom. Žiak sa stal pionierom. Čierny chlieb je zdravší ako biely. Ostaň verný svojej vlasti.*

The predicate expressed by an interjection is rather rare. It is used only in emotive speech. For example: *A myška pred kocúrom šuch do diery. Ale on vtom bum – zabil klin do zeme.*

The **attribute** is a part of a sentence determining a noun. The relation of the attribute to the noun can be expressed by concord. We distinguish between congruent and non-congruent attributes.

The congruent attribute is in agreement with its governing noun, and is usually an adjective, a numeral or a pronoun: *dobrý priateľ, prvá chyba, pekné slovo, títo chlapi...* For example: *V treťom dvore bol v prízemí i chorobinec: to boli dve dlhé, pomerne nízke izby s nízkym sklepením a s malými riedkymi oblôčkami. Prvý pohyb, ktorý som zaznamenala po jeho výbuchu, bolo zovretie Nikodémovej päste na kolene pracovných nohavíc.*

Less frequently, the congruent attribute is a noun: *hrad Devín, od hradu Devína, k hradu Devínu...* The nominative attribute is preferred in notional expressions: *mesto Trnava, k mestu Trnava, z mesta Trnava...*

The non-congruent attribute is mostly represented by a noun whose relation is given by a certain case. For the most part it is the genitive case: *plocha stola, výška stromu, farba očí, tvar predmetu...* Less frequently it is another case. Examples: *pomoc priateľovi, úcta k vlasti, boj na život a na smrť, boj o život, chlieb s maslom, rana nožom, vchod do školy, záujem o peniaze, povest o Svätoplukovi.*

In rare cases the attribute may be represented by an adverb: usually it deals with technical or set expressions. Examples: *cesta ta a späť, skok roznožmo, kotúl vpred...*

We ask about the attribute *aký, ktorý, koľký, či: aký chlapec?, ktorý ročník?, či dom?*

**Apposition** is a special kind of attribute. It is a congruent attribute represented by

a noun. We determine the meaning of the noun by the apposition. This mode permits an important feature to be expressed, or a full expression or another name for the same object to be referent. Examples: *mládež, dievčence aj chlapci*; *Ludovít Štúr, zakladateľ dnešnej spisovnej slovenčiny*; *Matica slovenská, dôležitý kultúrny spoločnosť*; *podmet a prísudok, teda základné vetné členy dvojčlennej vety*.

An **object** is the part of a sentence that completes the meaning of the verb. The object is usually expressed by a noun or a noun equivalent. The dependence of the object on the verb is expressed by government: the object can be expressed by nouns in all the non-prepositional, as well as prepositional cases except the nominative case.

The question about the object consists of a case of the interrogative pronoun *kto, čo* and the finite verb. For example: *Chlapec hľadá na otca pokojne*. The verb *hľadiet* here has the object in the prepositional case *na otca*: *hľadiet na niekoho*. We ask the question *Na koho hľadiet?* or *Na koho hľadá chlapec pokojne?*

An **adverbial modifier** is a part of a sentence determining the circumstances, the qualities of actions and the degree of the properties. It is most often represented by an adverb and a noun.

We ask about the adverbial modifier by means of the adverbs: *kedy, kde, ako, prečo*... E.g. *Ako bzučali motory? Ako sa zablysko nad kopcami? Kde mám ísť?*

An adverbial modifier can be divided according to their relationship to the verb. An adverbial modifier can express:

1. the place of an action in space (= determination of place),
2. the place of an action in time (= determination of time),
3. the qualitative as well as quantitative determination of an action (= determination of manner),
4. the causal relation of an action to other phenomena of the reality (= determination of cause).

The adverbial modifier of place indicates the direction, aim, starting point or final units of a place. The question in this case is formed with *kde, kam, až kam, pokiaľ, odkiaľ*... E.g. *Ty zostaň v izbe. Poďme my preč! Túto dedinu veru nenájdete na mape. Kosodrevina rastie vo vysokých polohách*.

The adverbial modifier of time expresses the time, beginning, end and duration of an action. We ask questions with *kedy, odkedy, dokedy, ako dlho*... E.g. *Teraz je tu dobre. Dnes bude zábava. Od začiatku roka trvá toto počasie. Túto robotu môžeme spraviť tak za dva dni. Vrátia sa o dva dni*.

The adverbial modifier of manner expresses the character of an action. We ask the questions with *ako, akým spôsobom*... E.g. *Pri páde som si veľmi udrel koleno. Za dedinou, v poli objal ich širokým náručím vietor. Zatrepa sa v bahne ako ryba na suchu*.

The adverbial modifier of cause indicates the cause of an action, the reason why something happens. We ask about it by means *prečo, pre akú príčinu*... E.g. *Adam až zmrzol od ľaku. Deti nemôžu zaspať od vzrušenia. Susedovie Paľko umrel na zápal pľúc. Mať ho hladila z vďačnosti po hlave*.

The **complement** expresses the state in which a subject, or an object of the sentence occurs under the predicated action.

Unlike the other parts of the sentence, the complement can be determined uniquely within a sentence: here the sentence construction is dealt with rather than the relations between the words, as it is in the case of the attribute, the object or the adverbial modifier.

The complement to the subject is mostly expressed by a noun, an adverb, a particle. Examples: *Ján Michalec sa predstavil ako zástupca triedy. Nič to, ak sa vrátíme ako poslední. Chlapci kričali, utekajúc dolu dedinou.* The complement to the object is usually expressed by an adjective, a participle or an infinitive. Examples: *Veliteľ a tábora sme našli raneného a vysileného. Vtedy ste zazreli už aj vy padať horiace lietadlo.*

The question about the complement is introduced by *aký, ako, kto* in connection with the predicate and the subject or object of a sentence. For example: *Chlapci sa vrátili ustatí.* The adjective *ustatí* is the complement of the sentence. We ask the question *Akí sa vrátili chlapci?* Another example: *Chlapca sme našli chorého.* The adjective *chorého* is the complement to the object of the sentence. We ask the question *Akého sme našli chlapca?*

The complement may be in agreement with the subject or the object, and then it is a congruent complement. If not in agreement with one of these two elements of the sentence it is called a non-congruent complement.

## COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES

Complex and compound sentences are made up of several simple sentences (clauses) that express more complicated ideas.

According to the relationship of individual clauses we distinguish the compound and the complex sentences. In a compound sentence the clauses are equal. In a complex sentence one clause is subordinate to the main clause and thus has only an auxiliary function.

**The compound sentence** is formed by joining several clauses on the same level. Sometimes clauses are connected with the help of a conjunction and sometimes they follow each other without any conjunction. According to manner in which they are joined and their meaning, they can be divided into: a) combining, b) adversative, c) causal, d) resultative sentences. In addition we sometimes distinguish amplifying, disjunctive and concessive compound sentences.

a) Combining compound sentences: *Katrák zdvihol od zeme oko a pozrel na fľašu. – Dostal do rúk zbraň a už ju nepustil. – Uhlík mu vletel rovno do neho a vypálil zreničku. – Vykĺzol spod periny a cupol na hlinenú dlážku. – Pozapalovali sme si a zháňali tému na rozhovor.*

b) Adversative compound sentences: *Čierny Dunčo zašteká, ale sa s Broudom hneď spriatelí. – Mne sa už tri vydali, a neplakal som. – Nad ránom si všetci ľahli, ale Jerguš nezaspal.*

c) Causal and resultative compound sentences: *Len mi pošepni a hneď na mieste ti ju vystavím. (= resultative). Na mieste ti ju vystavím, len mi pošepni. (= causal) – Maťo beztak na to myslel, nemusela som mu to ani povedať.*

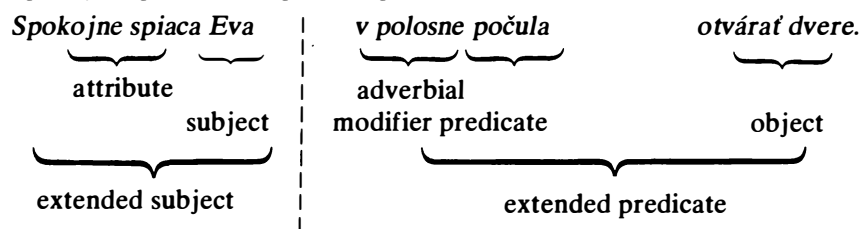
(= resultative) *Nemusela som mu to ani povedať, Maťo beztak myslel na to.*  
 (= causal) – *Celý život sme sa trápili a takto sa ti odvdáčia.* (= resultative) *Takto sa ti odvdáčia a celý život sme sa trápili.* (= causal)

Amplifying compound sentences: *Pokročí a zájde za ostatnú drevenicu, ba dostane sa až do polí.* The disjunctive compound sentence: *Tak si voľ: alebo dom postavíte a oddelíš sa, alebo ja odídem.* The concessive compound sentence: *Privítanku som mu vzal, a on ju predsa vie.*

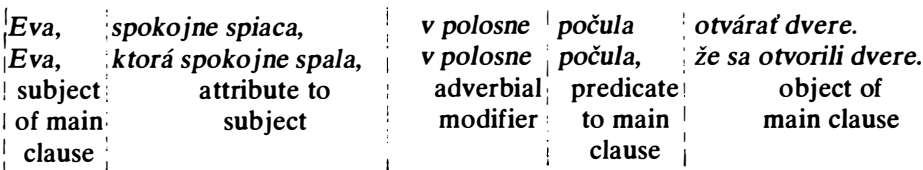
If two clauses in the compound sentence follow each other in a temporal sequence, the compound sentence can be changed into a complex sentence: *Otec pustil lyžicu a natiahol pred mamu široké ruky. Keď otec pustil lyžicu, natiahol pred mamu široké ruky.* – *Prišiel domov a pýtal sa po Pavlovi. Keď prišiel domov, pýtal sa po Pavlovi.* – *Janko prekročil trám a pevným krokom kráčal ďalej. Keď Janko prekročil trám, pevným krokom kráčal ďalej.* Etc.

**The complex sentence** is formed by joining several clauses, one of which is the main clause while the others have an auxiliary function. The simple sentence

*Spokojne spiaca Eva v polosne počula otvárať dvere* can be divided as follows:



Some of the members of the given simple sentence can be expressed by the whole clause that make up the complex sentence. The original unchanged members of the sentence will form the base of the complex sentence, its main clause, while the new sentences replacing the members of the sentence will become the subordinate clauses.



The attribute as well as the object in the new sentence are expressed by a whole clause. These subordinate clauses are not autonomous as to their meaning and grammar.

For example :

*Janko hovoril,*

*že pred našim domom zazrel chlapca,*

*ktorého poznal.*

main clause  
to the 2nd  
clause

subordinate clause, but at the same time  
subordinate to the 1st one  
and the main clause to the 3rd one

subordinate clause  
and also subordinate  
clause to the 2nd one

One clause can be main with regard to several subordinate clauses.

In view of the sentence element expressed by the subordinate clause, complex sentences may be divided into subjective, predicative, objective, attributive, adverbial and complemental.

a) The subjective complex sentences are those in which the subordinate clause is the subject of the main clause. We ask about the subjective clause in the same way as we do about the subject of the sentence. For example: *Mýlilo iba to, že ho akosi nik nebral vážne.* – *To tiež muselo len od vás vyjsť, že sa tak náhlyme.* – *Kto mlčí, ten svedčí.* – *Keby z leňošenia plynul zárobok, to by bolo najkrajšie.* – *Ani mu na um neprišlo, že Chlistoň by mohol pracovať aj ako riadny robotník.*

b) The predicative complex sentence is a sentence in which the subordinate clause represents the predicate of the main clause. When asking about them we use the same question as about non-verbal predicate. Examples: *Aká matka, taká Katka.* – *Aký otec, taký syn.* The predicative complex sentences are rather rare.

c) The objective complex sentence is one in which the subordinate clause represents the object of the main clause. We ask about it the same question as we do about the object. Examples: *Videl, ako sa Marienka učupila do kúta a hlávku tisla o začadený múr.* – *Výstrely oznamovali svetu, že žije a zdravý odchádza do vrchov.*

d) The attributive complex sentence is a sentence in which the subordinate clause represents the attribute to a noun in the main clause. By means of this sentence we usually modify the noun which is the subject, the object or the adverbial modifier.

Attributive complex sentences can be relational or conjunctive. They are divided according to whether the subordinate clause is introduced by the relative pronoun (*ktorý, aký, čo, či...*) or by the conjunction (*kde, ako, prečo...*).

Examples: *Videl otca, ktorého už niekoľko dní nebolo doma.* – *Topor kladiva bol z celej hrady, dotýkal sa koncom veľikánskeho dreveného kolesa, z ktorého trčalo niekoľko mocných zubov.* – *Ja v šiestom roku kvôli tomu som sa usiloval a rozhadzoval všetkých, čo nado mnou sedeli.* – *Rád mal jeho dobré oči, ako mávajú mladé jalovičky.*

A series of similar subordinate clauses following each other in one complex sentence should be avoided: *Túto knihu, ktorú ti venujem, som získal prostredníctvom švagra, ktorý je zamestnaný v predajni, ktorá je na Bernolákovej ulici.* (= *Knihu, ktorú ti venujem, som získal prostredníctvom švagra, zamestnaného v predajni na Bernolákovej ulici.*) – *Počuli sme, že pri pokladnici hovorili, že lístky už nedostať.* (= *Pri pokladnici vraj hovorili, že lístky už nedostať.*)

e) An adverbial complex sentence is a sentence in which the subordinate clause

represents the adverbial modifier. By means of the adverbial clause the predicate of the main clause is modified.

The adverbial complex sentences like adverbial modifiers can be divided into adverbial sentences of place, time, manner, cause and result.

Adverbial complex sentences of place : *Kde nechodí slnko, tam chodí lekár.*  
– *Keď sa Adam priblížil, zeman začal silným korbáčom chlapa biť, kadiaľ ho zachytil.* – *Ide bez námietky, kde ho povinnosť volá.* – *Vrátili sme sa na kopce, odkiaľ bolo dobre vidieť veľmi ďaleko.*

Adverbial complex sentences of time : *Adam sa striasol od hnusu a hrôzy, keď videl tú chasu, a ponáhal sa ďalej.* – *Na niekoľko sekúnd mi bolo, akoby som bol urobil hlúpy krok, keď po robote hrám v šachy s Bešeňovským z výhrevne.* – *Všetky sľuby sa môžu splniť, keď pôjdu masy za nami.*

Adverbial complex sentences of manner : *Spravil to tak majstrovsky, že v kuchyni zaburácal smiech.* – *Hovoril tak pekne a vzletne, ako sme ho doteraz ešte nepočuli.* – *Hádže červenú záplavu na steny, stá keď sa zore zapália.* – *Erdža, tmavohnedá kobyľa, klamala, ako mohla.*

Causal and resultative adverbial complex sentences : *Vruby sa mu stávali vždy hlbšími, lebo po chvíli prišiel na správnu techniku úderu a vyskúšal povahu dreva.*  
– *Dlhé roky som robil preto, aby som vytvoril bezpečný prístav pre seba a pre mojich synov.* – *Nerob skazu, lebo budeš chodiť bosý.*

f) A complemental complex sentence is such a sentence in which the subordinate clause represents the complement. Complemental sentences occur very rarely. Example : *Dva týždne pred zakončením školy pán učiteľ označil Jana, že bude na skúške vítať hostí.*

**The extended compound and complex sentences** are combinations of more than two clauses into a higher unit. The main and subordinate clauses are related in various ways thus forming several types of the compound and complex sentences.

Such sentences are divided according to the relationship between individual clauses. Here – like in the simple compound and complex sentences – the basic relation may be co-ordination or subordination inside which various combinations are applied. Thus we distinguish the following types of the extended compound and complex sentences.

co-ordinative

- a) with homogeneous parts
- b) with heterogeneous parts

subordinative

- a) one-element
- b) more-elements

The extended compound sentence with homogeneous parts is a sentence in which several main clauses are connected.

Examples : *Voda začala náhle vrieť a prameň s veľkým hukotom vystrekol do výšky a celkom sa stratil.* – *Taký bol ako kus dreva, iba do oka mu vystúpila slza a zviezla sa mu dole lícom na lavicu.* – *Padali do snehu ako kláty, zakrúcali sa do plášťov a zatvárali oči.* – *Hľadel na ňu so slzami v očiach a ona ho pohladkala vyschnutou rukou po tvári a úsmev jej pootvoril biele pery.* – *Vy dostávate deputát, používate naturálne byty, chováte prasce a hydinu a Tulipán vám platí namiesto tovarichu mesačné konvencie.*

The extended heterogeneous compound sentence is a sentence in which the main relation is coordination but any of the main clauses may still be extended by one or several subordinate clauses.

Examples: *No naši Haluškovci sú ešte dobrí s Rybárikovci, a tak sa zdá, že i naďalej tak ostanú. – Ešte v ten večer sa dozvedeli o príchode celú Bojnica a na druhý deň široko-ďaleko rozniesla sa zvesť o treste, ktorý stihol lakomého Pokyho. – Niekoľko ráz vytiahol hodinky a počítal v duchu, či ešte pred dvanástou zájde na Skalku. – Včelár Pribiš pokrútil hlavou, že sa mu to celkom nepáči, ale klát im vďačne dal. – Najsamprv sa zarúbalo zo strany, na ktorú bol určený pád stromu, a potom sa podpíliť kmeň z opačnej strany. – Neuráža ho, že som od neho hodne mladší, a mňa zas vypína hrdosť, že môžem staršieho poučať.*

The extended complex sentences are such sentences which have one main clause extended by several subordinate clauses. The subordinate clauses as a whole can represent one or several members of the sentence at different places of the main clause.

## INTERRUPTED AND IRREGULAR SENTENCES

**Parenthesis** is a word or a group of words freely inserted into a sentence, to which it is not related grammatically but helps to complete its meaning. A parenthesis in an oral utterance is set off by intonation. In writing, it is marked off by commas, brackets or dashes. Brackets are mostly used in the technical style, dashes in other styles.

Examples: *Dajte mi, prosím, ulity. Peter je – možno takmer s určitou povedať – posledný mohykán. K platnej dodávkovej zmluve na rok 1985 (pozri aj číslo 27-34R) pripájam súpis mien.*

**Ellipsis** means that a part of the sentence is omitted. An elliptical sentence is such one from which a less important part is omitted due to various reasons. It can be found in colloquial as well as poetic style. In colloquial utterances it serves to achieve brevity, pitchiness or expression, it occurs less frequently in technical utterances – in headlines.

Examples: *Ničoho nebolo... Ľudia boli neskúsení, nespoľahliví... Geológ (hovoril) vraj tu nebude vody... Na päťdesiat ľudí (tu bol) jediný komunista... – Akčný plán – (je) chlapecké slovo. – Z Moskvy do vlasti (odišla maďarská vládna delegácia). – Mladosť – radosť.*

**The projected part of a sentence** is an element of emotional utterance. If the author wishes to emphasize one of the members of the sentence, he sets it off from the rest of the sentence emphasizing it by means of intonation or a demonstrative pronoun. For example: *Pieseň, to je umenie a umenie okrášľuje život...*

**Aposiopesis** is a sudden breaking-off in speech. The reason may lie with the speaker or may be due to outside circumstances. In the former case, the speaker may lack adequate means for expressing himself, in the latter, he may be interrupted by an interlocutor – as in dialogue. Examples: *Iba naši bumbaji... To je strašné! – Náš ňanško videli na vlastné oči... Pitoňák: Ale súdruhovia... veď... napísal som iba to, čo akosi... Milec: A to nejde!*



---

---

# SLOVAK DIALECTS

Dialect is a form of speech peculiar to a geographically bordered locality.

Slovak dialects developed under conditions prevailing in Slovakia after the end of the Great Moravia empire. They differ mostly in phonology and in inflection. There are fewer differences in word formation and in syntax, but there are many differences in vocabulary.

Slovak dialects have been divided into three basic groups: Central-Slovak, West-Slovak and East-Slovak. These three groups were well-developed in the 15th century.

All the three Slovak dialects are also spoken by the Slovaks living outside Slovak territory: in Hungary, Yugoslavia, Romania and Bulgaria. After the victory over Turks near Vienna (1683) many Slovaks gradually emigrated to Dolná Zem and settled down to the east of the Slovak-Hungarian language boundary. They populated the Budapest environs on either side of the Danube River, went to Heves and Borsád districts, then to the Tokay mountains and near Niregyháza, to Békés and Csanád district, to Banát and Bácska, to Sriem and Slavónia in Yugoslavia and from there to Bulgaria, to the Bihar district and Bukovina in Romania.

The Slovaks live in these places in more-or-less self-contained enclaves or in single villages, or only in smaller groups among speakers of other languages.

**Central-Slovak dialects** as a whole are characterized by several phonological as well as morphological properties.

a) The phonological properties are the following:

The original groups \**ořt-*, \**ořt-* have changed into *rat-*, *lat-*: *rakita*, *rásocha*, *lakeť*, *laňi*.

The original yer (ultra-short) vowel have been changed into the vowels *e*, *o*, *a*: *deň*, *sen*, *orol*, *popol*, *blázon*, *ocot*, *chrbát*, *dážď*, *raz*, *fan*, *cesnak*, etc.

The fleeting vowels here are *je*, *uo*, *o*, *á*: *hrušiek*, *jamuok*, *látok*, *viedou*, etc.

The vowel *ä* has replaced the original *ę* after labial consonants; it also occurs after *k'*, *g'*, and other originally soft consonants, replacing 'a of any origin: *mäso*, *mäki*, *pamätať*, *pät*, *ďevät*, *vädnuť*; *käčka*, *kämeň*, *ukäzovať*, *gäti*; *zarábät*, *mäd*, etc.

Instead of *ä*, 'á the diphthong *ja* is used almost everywhere: *pamjätka*, *ďevjätí*, *pjätí*, *prijast*, *trjast*, *vjazat*, *vjac*, *vzjat*, etc.

The diphthongs *ja*, *je*, *uo* and also *ju* in a limited number of cases, are to be found in the Central-Slovak dialects, e.g. *vjazat*, *žjal*, *robja*, *vjem*, *bjeli*, *kjoň*, *stjol*, *mjožem*, *vjoľa*, *njočka*, *hňezdo*, *hvjězda*, *paňju*, *cudzju*, etc.

The rhythmical rule applies in the Central-Slovak dialects: *krásni, krásna*, etc.  
The original groups *dl, tl* have changed into *l*: *šilo, salo, zubalo, omelo*, etc.  
The final *-l* in the “l” participle has been replaced by *-u*: *bou, dau, videu*, etc.  
The consonant *v* inside and at the end of a word, preceding a consonant, is pronounced *u*: *brau, robiu, dáuno, prauda, dŕouča, stouka, bratou, ženou*.

The consonants *ť, ď, ň, ľ* are pronounced when preceding *e, i, ja, je, ju*: *ďeť, dňes, deň, ľeňiví, ľipa, djera, koňjec*, etc.

In the north of the Central-Slovak area the soft *k', g', ch'* are pronounced in the following cases *kámeň, gäjadi, ukázovať*, etc.

b) Characteristic properties in declension:

in the nominative singular of the neuter nouns are the forms *znameňja, zdravja, průta, skála* (this is connected with the rhythmical rule);

the form ending in *-uo* in the nominative singular of the neuter adjectives: *pekuo, dobroo, bjeluo*;

the lengthened forms *ňesjem, vedjem, berjem* are to be found in the present tense and the forms *vedieť, rozumieť* in the infinitive;

the form *sa* (= sú) occurs in the 3rd person plural.

**West-Slovak dialects** as a whole have several characteristic properties.

a) Their phonological system is characterized by the following properties:

The original *\*ořt-, \*ořt-* have been changed into *rot-, lot-*: *rokita, rořtem, vloňi*; but the forms *rasocha, rařdie*, have spread up to the western border of Slovakia.

Instead of *yer*, *e* is almost regular: *oves, reř, deska, kotel, děřč, blázen, statek, veter*, etc.

The original *ę* has been changed into *a, á*: *maso, hovado, đevať, prařť, prařdem, trářť, robá, nosá*, etc.

The rhythmical rule does not apply: *bíli, chválím, krásná*, etc.

The Old-Slavonic diphthongs have been changed into the long *á, é, ó* or the narrowed *í, ú*: *řálit, vázať, robá, kóň or kúň, mój or múj, mléko or mlíko, ňěřť or ňířť, hňěřdo or hňířdo, vém or vím*.

The pair *v – f* is assimilated in the same way as the other pair-consonants: *ocof, bratof, dřfka or dřfka*, etc.

There is not the soft *ľ* in the southern area of the West-Slovak dialect. The central *l* is pronounced: *laví, lud, lutovať, laliĵa*.

Instead of the Central-Slovak *ť, ď*, the consonants *c, dz* are pronounced: *dzeci, dzedzina, vedzece, ňesece*, or only somewhere *t, d*: *dedina, vrátit*.

The original group *řč* is conserved: *eřče, řčepit, řčasní*.

Geminated consonants can be found: *occa, masso, kařřa, slamenní, kořenní, stojĵá*.

The groups *dl, dn* have been changed into *ll, nn*: *sallo, řillo, jella, jelli, jenna, sannúť, krannúť, or kraňňe*, etc.

b) In morphology:

the particular forms in the declension of nouns are to be found in the following cases:

in the nominative singular of neuter nouns: *vajco, líco, srcco*;

the ending *-ú* or *-u* is used in the instrumental singular of feminine: *s tú dobrú ženu, se mnú* or *s tu dobrou ženu, se mnu*, respectively;

in the nominative singular of neuter nouns: *zbožé, obilé* or *zboží, obilí*, respectively;

in the nominative plural: *ľudí, sinové* or *ľudje, sinovje*, or *ľudjé, sinovjé*;

in the forms of adjectives *cudzého, cudzému, cudzé*.

The following different forms are to be found in conjugation:

In the present and infinitive the short forms are used: *ňesem, pečem, vedieť, rozumieť*;

Past participle *robel – robela* (but also *robila*), *pel – pela* can be found in quite a large area.

**East-Slovak dialects** have quite a number of properties different from those of the Central-Slovak dialects.

a) A complete lack of quantity is one of the most remarkable properties of the East-Slovak dialects. Examples: *volam, davam, luka, muka, dobra, dobrí, dobre*, etc. Here we can also find a strong stress on the penultimate syllable of the word.

The original *\*ořt-*, *\*ořt-* have become *rot-*, *lot-*: *rokita, rozvora, rožen, rosnuc, lokec, loňi, lonski*.

Instead of the original yer, *e* is usually to be found: *oves, deska, blázen, ľen, dzeň, zdechnuc*, but also *osol, bočka* or *bačka, voš, moch, cesnak, se mnu* or *so mnu*, and also *zo mnu, zo sestru, domek, stolek, statek*.

As the fleeting vowel, usually *e* is used: *vieter, kmoter, oheň*, but *vedol, ňesol, spadol*.

The nasal *ę* in the short syllables has been changed into *e*: *meso, pamec, peta, dzevec, švete, dzešec, presc, predzem, me, ce, še, dzešovac, dzefče, kurče, hreda*, etc. The long *ę* has become *ja* following the labials and *a* following the other consonants: *pjati, pamjatka, dzevjati, dzešati, častka, šaha, poradok, zajac, jastrab, zlomja, bavja še*, but *jedza, noša, pača še nam, hvara*, etc.

The diphthong *ja* is to be found after the labials: *kupja, zarabjac, vjazac, trafjac, smjac še, Slovjak*, but *koňar, šviňar*, etc. The other consonants are usually followed by *a*: *oňi hreša, braňa, vidza, kriča, zohrac*.

Changes of *je* into *i* and of *jo* into *u*, can be found in these dialects. They are most frequent in Šariš and Zemplín: *ciň, drik, hrich, chľib, chľiv/f, dzifka, mira, pisek, brižek, poľifka, hňizdo, mlíko*, etc., and also *kuň, muž/š, stul, muj, bratuf*, etc.

The syllabic *r, l* in the East-Slovak dialects have been changed into *ar, er, ir, ri, al, el, ol, ul, lu, li*, etc: *bardo, zarno, sarňa, tvardi, čarni, vjerba, verba* or *virba, serco, cherbet* or *charbet, verch, halboki, sľiboki, polno* or *pulno, volna, jablučko, dľuho, slunko, tľusti, žolti, solza, bolcha* or *bľicha, viľk* or *veľk*, etc.

The original *ť, ď* have been changed into *c, dz*: *dzeci, dzedzina, volac, isc, cicho, vracic*, etc.

The soft sibilants *ś, ź* are also to be found in the East-Slovak dialects: *śeno, suśed/t, śivi, śedzec, źima, źac, veźňem, śvet, śpivac, priňešli* (but *priňesla*).

The soft *l, ň* are used frequently: *ľad/t, ľudze, ľutovac, ľipa, ľist, ľes, streľati, ňezela, ňič*.

The groups *šč* and *ždž* are to be found here: *ščesce, ščedri* or *ščidri, ščit, ščebel, dišč – diždza, hviždžec*, etc.

b) The East-Slovak dialects have the following characteristic properties in the declension of nouns:

in the nominative singular of neuter nouns we find *šerco, lico, ojo, moro, poľo*;  
in the nominative singular of neuter nouns we find: *zbože, ľisce, vešela, znameňe*;  
in the instrumental singular of masculine nouns the form *bratom* is to be found;  
the ending *-u* in the instrumental singular of feminine: *zo ženu, zo sestru, s totu našu Dobru maceru, s tebu, zo sebu*;

the forms ending in *-i* in the nominative plural of masculine nouns: *chlapci, chlopi*, but also the forms ended in *-e, -ove*: *ľudze, rodiče, bratove, sinove*;

the ending *-och* can be found in the genitive (accusative) and locative plural of all the genders: *od bratoch, ženoch, mestoch, ulicoch, u ustoch, pri Košicoch*, etc. In Zemplín *-oŭ* is used in the genitive plural: *bratoŭ*;

the ending *-om* is used in the dative plural of all the genders: *bratom, ženom, mestom, ľicom, znameňom, dzefčetom*.

The following characteristic properties are to be found in the declension of adjectives and pronouns:

in the nominative singular neuter, the general form ending in *-e* is used: *dobre dzecko*;

the ending *-eho* is used in the genitive and the ending *-emu* in the dative singular of adjectives and pronouns: *dobreho, dobremu, teho, temu, keho, kemu, jeho, jemu, mojeho, mojemu...*;

the forms *ocovo, macerino, moja, vašo (chlapci, dzefki, dzeci)* are used in the nominative plural of the possessive adjectives and pronouns for all the genders;

the ending *-e* is used in the nominative plural of the qualitative adjectives for all the genders: *tote dobre ľudze*;

only the ending *-ima* is used in the instrumental plural: *s tíma dobrima, z našima, z mojima, z ňima*, but *z nami, z vami*;

the emphasized form of the demonstrative pronouns is characteristic in the East-Slovak dialects: *toten, tota, toto, toteho, totemu*, etc. as compared to the Central-Slovak *tento, táto, toto, tohoto*;

the interrogative pronoun *čo* is pronounced *co* almost in the whole area of East-Slovakia.

The characteristic features found in conjugation:

the 1st person singular in the present generally ends in *-m*: *vedzem, idzem, nešem, spadňem, volam, kupujem, robim*, etc.

the 1st person plural generally ends in *-me*: *ňešeme, vedzeme*;

the participle *bul, bula, bulo, buľi* is characteristic of the East-Slovak dialects;

the future tense is usually formed as follows: *budzem robic*; but the forms *budzem robil, budu robiľi, budžeš ti ešči plakala* are also in use.

# PARADIGMS

## NOUNS

	N	G	D	A	L	I
Sg. Pl.	chlap chlapi	chlapa chlapov	chlapovi chlapom	chlapa chlapov	chlapovi chlapoch	chlapom chlapmi
Sg. Pl.	hrdina hrdinovia	hrdinu hrdinov	hrdinovi hrdinom	hrdinu hrdinov	hrdinovi hrdinoch	hrdinom hrdinami
Sg. Pl.	dub duby	duba dubov	dubu dubom	dub duby	dube duboch	dubom dubmi
Sg. Pl.	stroj stroje	stroja strojov	stroju strojom	stroj stroje	stroji strojoch	strojom strojmi
Sg. Pl.	žena ženy	ženy žien	žene ženám	ženu ženy	žene ženách	ženou ženami
Sg. Pl.	ulica ulice	ulice ulíc	ulici uliciam	ulicu ulice	ulici uliciach	ulicou ulicami
Sg. Pl.	dlaň dlane	dlane dlaní	dlani dlaniam	dlaň dlane	dlani dlaniach	dlaňou dlaňami
Sg. Pl.	kosť kosti	kosti kostí	kosti kostiam	kosť kosti	kosti kostiach	kosťou kosťami
Sg. Pl.	mesto mestá	mesta miest	mestu mestám	mesto mestá	meste mestách	mestom mestami
Sg. Pl.	srdce srdcia	srdca srdc	srdcu srdciam	srdce srdcia	srdci srdciach	srdcom srdcami
Sg. Pl.	vysvedčenie vysvedčenia	vysvedčenia vysvedčení	vysvedčeniu vysvedčeniam	vysvedčenie vysvedčenia	vysvedčení vysvedčeniach	vysvedčením vysvedčeniami
Sg. Pl.a) b)	dievča dievčence dievčatá	dievčaťa dievčeniec dievčat	dievčaťu dievčencom dievčatám	dievča dievčence dievčatá	dievčati dievčencoch dievčatách	dievčaťom dievčencami dievčatami

# ADJECTIVES

		N	G	D	A	L	I
Sg.	M	pekný	pekného	peknému	pekného (A) pekný (I)	peknom	pekným
	F N	pekná pekné	peknej pekného	peknej peknému	peknú pekné	peknej peknom	peknou pekným
Pl.	M (A)	pekní	pekných	pekným	pekných	pekných	peknými
	M (I) F N	pekné	pekných	pekným	pekné	pekných	peknými

(A=anim., I=inanim.)

Sg.	M	cudzí	cudzieho	cudziemu	cudzieho (A) cudzí (I)	cudzom	cudzím
	F N	cudzia cudzie	cudzej cudzieho	cudzej cudziemu	cudziu cudzie	cudzej cudzom	cudzou cudzím
Pl.	M (A)	cudzí	cudzích	cudzím	cudzích	cudzích	cudzími
	M (I) F N	cudzie	cudzích	cudzím	cudzie	cudzích	cudzími

Sg.	M	otcov	otcovho	otcovmu	otcovho (A) otcov (I)	otcovom	otcovým
	F N	otcova otcovo	otcovej otcovho	otcovej otcovmu	otcovu otcovo	otcovej otcovom	otcovou otcovým
Pl.	M (A)	otcovi	otcových	otcovým	otcových	otcových	otcovými
	M (I) F N	otcove	otcových	otcovým	otcove	otcových	otcovými

# PRONOUNS

	N	G	D	A	L	I
Sg.	ja	mňa, ma	mne, mi	mňa, ma	mne	mnou
	ty	teba, ťa	tebe, ti	teba, ťa	tebe	tebou
Pl.	my	nás	nám	nás	nás	nami
	vy	vás	vám	vás	vás	vami
Sg.	M on	jeho neho, ho -ňho, -ň	jemu nemu mu	jeho (A) ho, neho -ňho, -ň	ňom	ním
	F ona	jej, nej	jej, nej	ju, ňu	nej	ňou
	N ono	jeho, neho ho, -ňho, -ň	jemu nemu mu	ho, -ň	ňom	ním
Pl.	M (A) oni	ich, nich	im, nim	ich, nich	nich	nimi
	M (I) F N } ony	ich, nich	im, nim	ich, ne	nich	nimi
	-	- seba	sebe, si	seba, sa	sebe	sebou

	N	G	D	A	L	I
Sg.	M môj	môjho	môjmu	môjho (A) môj (I)	mojom	mojim
	F moja	mojej	mojej	moju	mojej	mojou
	N moje	môjho	môjmu	moje	mojom	mojim
Pl.	M moji (A)	mojich	mojim	mojich	mojich	mojimi
	M } (I) } F } N } moje	mojich	mojim	moje	mojich	mojimi
Sg.	M ten	toho	tomu	toho (A) ten (I)	tom	tým
	F tá	tej	tej	tú	tej	tou
	N to	toho	tomu	to	tom	tým
Pl.	M tí (A)	tých	tým	tých	tých	tými
	M } (I) } F } N } tie	tých	tým	tie	tých	tými
	kto čo	koho čoho	komu čomu	koho čo	kom čom	kým čím



VERBS	Themat. morph.
chytať chytám, chytáš, chytá, chytáme, chytáte, chytajú, chytaj chytajúc, chytal, chytaný, chytanie	-á/a/- -a-
rozumieť rozumiem, rozumieš, rozumie, rozumieme, rozumiete, rozumejú, rozumej rozumejúc, rozumel, Xrozumiený, Xrozumenie	-ie/ej/- -ie/e-
nieť nesiem, nesieš, nesie, nesieme, nesiete, nesú, nes nesúc, niesol, nesený, nesenie	-ie/θ/- -θ-
hynúť hyniem, hynieš, hynie, hynieme, hyniete, hynú, Xhyn hynúc, hynul, Xhynutý, hynutie	-ie/θ/- -ú/u-
trieť triem, trieš, trie, trieme, triete, trú, tri trúc, trel, trený, trenie	-ie/θ/- -θ-
brať beriem, berieš, berie, berieme, beriete, berú, ber berúc, bral, braný, branie	-ie/θ/- -a-
česať češiem, češeš, češe, češieme, češiete, češú, češ češúc, česal, česaný, česanie	-e/θ/- -a-
žať žnem, žneš, žne, žneme, žnete, žnú, žni žnúc, žal, žatý, žatie	-e/θ/- -θ-
chudnúť chudnem, chudneš, chudne, chudneme, chudnete, chudnú, chudni chudnúc, chudol, chudnutý, chudnutie	-e/θ/- -ú-
žuť žujem, žuješ, žuje, žujeme, žujete, žujú, žuj žujúc, žul, žutý, žutie	-e/θ/- -θ-
pracovať pracujem, pracuješ, pracuje, pracujeme, pracujete, pracujú, pracuj pracujúc, pracoval, X-ný, pracovanie	-e/θ/- -a-
robiť robím, robíš, robí, robíme, robíte, robia, rob robiac, robil, robený, robenie	-i/θ/- -i-
vidieť vidím, vidíš, vidí, vidíme, vidíte, vidia, vid vidiac, videl, videný, videnie	-i/θ/- -ie/e-

<b>kričať</b>	-i/Ø-
kričím, kričíš, kričí, kričíme, kričíte, kričia, krič kričiac, kričal, kričaný, kričanie	-a-
<b>byť</b>	-
som, si, je, sme, ste, sú, buď súc, bol, -, bytie	-
<b>jesť</b>	-
jem,ješ, je, jeme, jete, jedia, jedz jediac, jedol, jedený, jedenie	-
<b>vedieť</b>	-
viem, vieš, vie, vieme, viete, vedia, vedz vediac, vedel, vedený, vedenie	-
<b>chcieť</b>	-
chcem, chceš, chce, chceme, chcete, chcú, chci chcejúc, chcel, chcený, chcenie	-
<b>ísť</b>	-
idem, ideš, ide, ideme, idete, idú, idť (choď) idúc, išiel, Xjdený, Xjdenie	-
<b>stať (sa)</b>	-
stanem (sa), staneš (sa), stane (sa), staneme (sa), stanete (sa), stanú (sa), staň (sa) stanúc (sa), stal (sa), -, -	-
<b>stáť</b>	-
stojím, stojíš, stojí, stojíme, stojíte, stoja, stoj stojac, stál, Xstáty, státie	-

# USED LITERATURE

- ARNOLD, J. V.: *Leksikologia sovremennogo angliyskogo yazyka*. 2nd ed. Moscow 1973.
- GANSHINA, M.–VASILEVSKAYA, N.: *English Grammar*. 7th ed. Moscow 1951.
- BUJALKA, E.–DUBNÍČEK, J.: *Slovenský jazyk I*. Bratislava 1978.
- MISTRÍK, J.: *Basic Slovak*. Bratislava 1981. *Štylistika slovenského jazyka*. Bratislava 1977.
- MISTRÍK, J.–RUŽIČKA, J.–VILIKOVSKÁ, J.: *Slovenský jazyk pre ekonomické a stredné ekonomické školy*. Bratislava 1965.
- Morfológia slovenského jazyka*. Edit. J. Ružička. Bratislava 1966.
- ONDRUS, P.–HORECKÝ, J.–FURDÍK, J.: *Súčasný slovenský spisovný jazyk. Lexikológia*. Bratislava 1980.
- PAULINY, E.–RUŽIČKA, J.–ŠTOLC, J.: *Slovenská gramatika*. 5th ed. Bratislava 1968.
- ŠÁRA, M.–ŠÁROVÁ, J.–BYTEL, A.: *Čeština pro cizince*. 2nd ed. Prag 1969.

# CONTENTS

PREFACE . . . . .	5
PLACE OF THE SLOVAK LANGUAGE IN THE LANGUAGE FAMILY . . . . .	6
FROM THE HISTORY OF THE STANDARD LANGUAGE . . . . .	8
LETTERS AND SOUNDS . . . . .	12
Slovak alphabet . . . . .	12
Vowels . . . . .	12
Consonants . . . . .	13
Palatalisation . . . . .	14
Diphthongs . . . . .	15
Voiced and voiceless consonants . . . . .	15
Pairs of consonants . . . . .	15
Stress . . . . .	16
Hard, soft and neutral consonants . . . . .	16
Prosodic properties of a sentence . . . . .	16
PARTS OF SPEECH . . . . .	18
Nouns . . . . .	19
Meaning of nouns . . . . .	19
Formation of nouns . . . . .	20
Grammatical characteristics of nouns . . . . .	23
Grammatical gender . . . . .	24
Grammatical number . . . . .	26
Declension of nouns . . . . .	27
The masculine gender . . . . .	27
The feminine gender . . . . .	33
The neuter gender . . . . .	41
Loan nouns . . . . .	45
Substantivization, derivation of nouns . . . . .	45
Adjectives . . . . .	46
Meaning and classification . . . . .	46
Formation of adjectives . . . . .	46
Degrees of comparison . . . . .	49
Declension of adjectives . . . . .	51
Special forms of adjectives . . . . .	54
Pronouns . . . . .	54
Meaning and classification . . . . .	54
Personal pronouns . . . . .	55
Possessive pronouns . . . . .	57
Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	58
Interrogative pronouns . . . . .	60

Numerals . . . . .	61
Meaning and classification . . . . .	61
Cardinal numerals . . . . .	62
Group-numerals . . . . .	66
Generic numerals . . . . .	67
Multiplicative numerals . . . . .	67
Ordinal numerals . . . . .	68
Indefinite numerals . . . . .	68
Numerical nouns . . . . .	69
Partitive numeral expressions . . . . .	69
Numeral constructions . . . . .	69
Verbs . . . . .	70
Meaning of verbs . . . . .	70
Classification of verbs . . . . .	70
Auxiliary verbs . . . . .	70
Autonomous verbs . . . . .	72
Grammatical and lexical-grammatical categories of verbs . . . . .	73
Morphological structure of verb forms . . . . .	77
Conjugation of the verb . . . . .	78
Finite and non-finite verb forms . . . . .	84
Adverbs . . . . .	94
Meaning and classification . . . . .	94
Pronominal adverbs . . . . .	95
Numeral adverbs . . . . .	96
Formation of adverbs . . . . .	96
Degrees of comparison of adverbs . . . . .	97
Prepositions . . . . .	98
Conjunctions . . . . .	103
Particles . . . . .	106
Interjections . . . . .	108
<b>ORTHOGRAPHY . . . . .</b>	<b>110</b>
Writing i-y . . . . .	110
Writing s-z . . . . .	112
Word division . . . . .	112
Capitalization . . . . .	113
Punctuation marks . . . . .	114
<b>VOCABULARY . . . . .</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>SYNTAX . . . . .</b>	<b>130</b>
Sentence . . . . .	130
Types of sentences . . . . .	132
Word-order . . . . .	132
Relations in sentences . . . . .	134
Sentence elements . . . . .	138
Compound and complex sentences . . . . .	142
Interrupted and irregular sentences . . . . .	146
<b>SLOVAK DIALECTS . . . . .</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>PARADIGMS . . . . .</b>	<b>151</b>
<b>USED LITERATURE . . . . .</b>	<b>157</b>

---

---

# **A GRAMMAR OF CONTEMPORARY SLOVAK**

---

**JOZEF MISTRÍK**

2. vydanie

Vydalo Slovenské pedagogické nakladateľstvo  
v Bratislave

Zodpovedná redaktorka **MÁRIA FÚRIKOVÁ**  
Technická redaktorka **EVA ONDERČINOVÁ**  
Prebal a väzbu navrhol **JOZEF MICHALÁČ**

Vytlačili Západoslovenské tlačiarne, n.p., závod Svornosť,  
Bratislava – Strán 160 – AH 13,24 (text 13,14, grafika 0,10)  
– VH 14,10 – 12/A – Náklad 2500 – Typ písma garmond  
Times – Technika tlače ofset – Schválené výmerom  
SÚKK-GR č. 1721/I-1986

**067 – 061 – 88 AGO**

**Kčs 18,50 v.**